

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Form 10-K  
March 08, 2018

Table of Contents

---

UNITED STATES

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM 10-K

ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934  
For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017

or

TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF  
1934

For the transition period from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_.

Commission file number: 001-37497

LIVE OAK BANCSHARES, INC.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

North Carolina

(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

26-4596286

(I.R.S. Employer Identification No.)

1741 Tiburon Drive,

Wilmington, NC

(Address of principal executive offices)

28403

(Zip Code)

Registrant's telephone number, including area code: (910) 790-5867

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of each class

Voting Common Stock, no par value per share

Name of each exchange on which registered

The NASDAQ Stock Market LLC

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act: None

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. YES  NO

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Act. YES  NO

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. YES  NO

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files). YES  NO

Edgar Filing: Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. - Form 10-K

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of the registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, smaller reporting company, or an emerging growth company. See definition of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company," and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large Accelerated Filer  Accelerated Filer  x

Non-accelerated Filer  (Do not check if smaller reporting company) Smaller Reporting Company

Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.

Indicate by check mark whether registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). YES  NO

The aggregate market value of the voting and non-voting common stock held by non-affiliates of the registrant as of June 30, 2017, was approximately \$593,149,164. Shares of common stock held by each officer and director have been excluded in that such persons may be deemed to be affiliates. There is no public market for the registrant's non-voting common stock. For purposes of this calculation, the registrant has assumed that the market value of each share of non-voting common stock is equal to a share of voting common stock.

**APPLICABLE ONLY TO CORPORATE ISSUERS:**

Indicate the number of shares outstanding of each of the issuer's classes of common stock, as of the latest practicable date.

As of March 7, 2018, there were 35,307,888 shares of the registrant's voting common stock outstanding and 4,643,530 shares of the registrant's non-voting common stock outstanding.

**DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE**

Portions of the registrant's definitive proxy statement for the 2018 Annual Meeting of Shareholders, which the registrant plans to file subsequent to the date hereof, are incorporated by reference into Part III. Portions of the registrant's annual report to shareholders for the year ended December 31, 2017, which will be posted on the registrant's website subsequent to the date hereof, are incorporated by reference into Part II.

---

---

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
 Report on Form 10-K  
 December 31, 2017  
 TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
PART I	
Item 1. <u>Business</u>	<u>1</u>
Item 1A. <u>Risk Factors</u>	<u>13</u>
Item 1B. <u>Unresolved Staff Comments</u>	<u>32</u>
Item 2. <u>Properties</u>	<u>32</u>
Item 3. <u>Legal Proceedings</u>	<u>32</u>
Item 4. <u>Mine Safety Disclosures</u>	<u>32</u>
PART II	
Item 5. <u>Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Shareholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities</u>	<u>33</u>
Item 6. <u>Selected Financial Data</u>	<u>35</u>
Item 7. <u>Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</u>	<u>37</u>
Item 7A. <u>Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk</u>	<u>79</u>
Item 8. <u>Financial Statements and Supplementary Data</u>	<u>81</u>
<u>Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</u>	<u>83</u>
<u>Consolidated Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2017 and 2016</u>	<u>84</u>
<u>Consolidated Statements of Income for the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015</u>	<u>85</u>
<u>Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income for the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015</u>	<u>86</u>
<u>Consolidated Statements of Changes in Shareholders' Equity for the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015</u>	<u>87</u>
<u>Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015</u>	<u>88</u>
<u>Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements</u>	<u>90</u>
Item 9. <u>Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure</u>	<u>147</u>
Item 9A. <u>Controls and Procedures</u>	<u>147</u>
Item 9B. <u>Other Information</u>	<u>147</u>
PART III	
Item 10. <u>Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance</u>	<u>148</u>
Item 11. <u>Executive Compensation</u>	<u>148</u>
Item 12. <u>Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Shareholder Matters</u>	<u>148</u>
Item 13. <u>Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence</u>	<u>148</u>
Item 14. <u>Principal Accounting Fees and Services</u>	<u>148</u>
PART IV	
Item 15. <u>Exhibits, Financial Statement Schedules</u>	<u>149</u>
<u>Signatures</u>	<u>150</u>
<u>Index to Exhibits</u>	<u>152</u>

## Table of Contents

### Important Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements

This Annual Report on Form 10-K (this "Report") contains statements that management believes are forward-looking statements, within the meaning of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. These statements generally relate to the financial condition, results of operations, plans, objectives, future performance or business of Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. (the "Company"). They usually can be identified by the use of forward-looking terminology, such as "believes," "expects," or "are expected to," "plans," "projects," "goals," "estimates," "will," "may," "should," "could," "would," "intends to," "outlook" or "anticipates," or variations of these and similar words, or by discussions of strategies that involve risks and uncertainties. You should not place undue reliance on these statements, as they are subject to risks and uncertainties, including but not limited to, those described in this Report. When considering these forward-looking statements, you should keep in mind these risks and uncertainties, as well as any cautionary statements management may make. Moreover, you should treat these statements as speaking only as of the date they are made and based only on information actually known to the Company at the time. Management undertakes no obligation to update publicly any forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise. Forward-looking statements contained in this Report are based on current expectations, estimates and projections about the Company's business, management's beliefs and assumptions made by management. These statements are not guarantees of the Company's future performance and involve certain risks, uncertainties and assumptions, which are difficult to predict. Therefore, actual outcomes and results may differ materially from what is expressed or forecasted in the forward-looking statements. These risks, uncertainties and assumptions include, without limitation:

- deterioration in the financial condition of borrowers resulting in significant increases in the Company's loan and lease losses and provisions for those losses and other adverse impacts to results of operations and financial condition;
- changes in Small Business Administration ("SBA") rules, regulations and loan products, including specifically the Section 7(a) program, changes in SBA standard operating procedures or changes to the status of Live Oak Banking Company (the "Bank") as an SBA Preferred Lender;
- changes in rules, regulations or procedures for other government loan programs, including those of the United States Department of Agriculture;
- changes in interest rates that affect the level and composition of deposits, loan demand and the values of loan collateral, securities, and interest sensitive assets and liabilities;
- the failure of assumptions underlying the establishment of reserves for possible loan and lease losses;
  - changes in loan underwriting, credit review or loss reserve policies associated with economic conditions, examination conclusions, or regulatory developments;
- a reduction in or the termination of the Company's ability to use the technology-based platform that is critical to the success of the Company's business model, including a failure in or a breach of the Company's operational or security systems or those of its third party service providers;
  - changes in financial market conditions, either internationally, nationally or locally in areas in which the Company conducts operations, including reductions in rates of business formation and growth, demand for the Company's products and services, commercial and residential real estate development and prices, premiums paid in the secondary market for the sale of loans, and valuation of servicing rights;
- changes in accounting principles, policies, and guidelines applicable to bank holding companies and banking;
- fluctuations in markets for equity, fixed-income, commercial paper and other securities, which could affect availability, market liquidity levels, and pricing;
- the effects of competition from other commercial banks, non-bank lenders, consumer finance companies, credit unions, securities brokerage firms, insurance companies, money market and mutual funds, and other financial institutions operating in the Company's market area and elsewhere, including institutions operating regionally, nationally and internationally, together with such competitors offering banking products and services by mail, telephone and the Internet;
- the Company's ability to attract and retain key personnel;
- changes in governmental monetary and fiscal policies as well as other legislative and regulatory changes, including with respect to SBA lending programs and investment tax credits;

• changes in political and economic conditions;  
• the impact of heightened regulatory scrutiny of financial products and services, primarily led by the Consumer Financial Protection Bureau;

---

Table of Contents

the Company's ability to comply with any requirements imposed on it by regulators, and the potential negative consequences that may result;

operational, compliance and other factors, including conditions in local areas in which the Company conducts business such as inclement weather or a reduction in the availability of services or products for which loan proceeds will be used, that could prevent or delay closing and funding loans before they can be sold in the secondary market;

the effect of any mergers, acquisitions or other transactions, to which the Company or the Bank may from time to time be a party, including management's ability to successfully integrate any businesses acquired;

other risk factors listed from time to time in reports that the Company files with the SEC, including those described under "Risk Factors" in this Report; and

the success at managing the risks involved in the foregoing.

Except as otherwise disclosed, forward-looking statements do not reflect: (i) the effect of any acquisitions, divestitures or similar transactions that have not been previously disclosed; (ii) any changes in laws, regulations or regulatory interpretations; or (iii) any change in current dividend or repurchase strategies, in each case after the date as of which such statements are made. All forward-looking statements speak only as of the date on which such statements are made, and the Company undertakes no obligation to update any statement, to reflect events or circumstances after the date on which such statement is made or to reflect the occurrence of unanticipated events.

---

Table of Contents

PART I

Item 1. BUSINESS

General

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. (“LOB” and, collectively with its subsidiaries including Live Oak Banking Company, the “Company,” also referred to as “our” and “we”), headquartered in Wilmington, North Carolina, is the bank holding company for Live Oak Banking Company (the “Bank” or “Live Oak Bank”). The Bank was incorporated in February 2008 as a North Carolina-chartered commercial bank and operates an established national online platform for small business lending. LOB was incorporated under the laws of the state of North Carolina on December 18, 2008, for the purpose of serving as the bank holding company of Live Oak Bank. LOB completed its initial public offering (“IPO”) in July 2015.

The Company

The Company predominantly originates loans partially guaranteed by the U.S. Small Business Administration (the “SBA”) and to a lesser extent by the U.S. Department of Agriculture (“USDA”) Rural Energy for America Program (“REAP”) and Business & Industry (“B&I”) loan programs. These loans are to small businesses and professionals with what the Company believes are lower risk characteristics. Industries, or “verticals,” on which the Company focuses its lending efforts are carefully selected. Within each vertical the Company retains individuals who possess extensive industry-specific experience. Additionally, the Company’s domain experts are engaged and active in each of the industries served.

In addition to focusing on industry verticals, the Company emphasizes developing detailed knowledge of its customers’ businesses. This knowledge is developed, in part, through regular visits to customers’ operations, wherever they are located. These regular visits are designed to foster both for the Company and for the customer a deep and personalized experience throughout the lending relationship. The Company has developed and continues to refine a technology-based platform to facilitate providing financial services to the small business community on a national scale and has leveraged this technology to optimize the Company’s loan origination process, customer experience, reporting metrics, and servicing activity. The Company services customers efficiently throughout the loan process and monitors their performance by means of the technology-based platform, which eliminates the need to maintain traditional branch locations.

For additional information on the Company’s business, financial performance and results of operations, see “Overview” and “Executive Summary” in Part II, Item 7. Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations of this Report. For information on the Company’s financial information about geographic areas, see Part II, Item 8 of this Report.

LOB’s voting common stock trades on the NASDAQ Global Select Market (“Nasdaq”) under the symbol “LOB.” As of January 31, 2018, there were 342 holders of record of LOB’s voting common stock. The Company’s principal executive office is located at 1741 Tiburon Drive, Wilmington, North Carolina 28403, telephone number (910) 790-5867. The Company maintains a website at [www.liveoakbank.com](http://www.liveoakbank.com). Documents available on the website include: (i) the Company’s Code of Ethics and Conflict of Interest Policy; and (ii) charters for the Audit and Risk, Compensation, and Nominating and Corporate Governance Committees of the Board of Directors. These documents also are available in print to any shareholder who requests a copy.

In addition, available free of charge through the Company’s website is the Annual Report on Form 10-K, Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, current reports on Form 8-K and amendments to those reports as soon as reasonably practicable after electronically filing or furnishing such material to the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”). These filings are also accessible on the SEC’s website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov). You may read and copy any material LOB files with the SEC at the SEC’s Public Reference Room at 100 F Street, NE, Washington, DC 20549. Information on the operation of the Public Reference Room may be obtained by calling the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330.

The Company also will provide without charge a copy of this Report, as well as any documents available on the Company’s website, to any shareholder by mail. Requests should be sent to Live Oak Bancshares, Inc., Attention: Corporate Secretary, 1741 Tiburon Drive, Wilmington, NC 28403.





## Table of Contents

### Competition

Commercial banking in the United States is extremely competitive. The Company competes with national banking organizations, including the largest commercial banks headquartered in the country, all of which have small business lending divisions. The Company also competes with other federally and state chartered financial institutions such as community banks and credit unions, finance and business development companies, peer-to-peer and marketplace lenders and other non-bank lenders. Many of the Company's competitors have higher legal lending limits and are also able to provide a wider array of services and make greater use of media advertising given their size and resources. Despite the intense level of competition among small business lenders, the Company believes that it occupies a lending category distinct from its competitors. One of the Company's principal advantages is the technology-based platform it uses, which management believes has accelerated the Company's ability to issue proposals, complete credit due diligence, finalize commitments and improve the overall customer experience. The Company believes that its personnel also provide a competitive advantage because they are industry participants with relevant experience in the Company's identified verticals.

### Employees

As of December 31, 2017, the Company had 504 full-time employees and 24 part-time employees. None of these employees are covered by a collective bargaining agreement, and management considers relations with employees to be good.

### Subsidiaries

In addition to the Bank, the Company held the following wholly-owned subsidiaries as of December 31, 2017:

• Reltco, Inc. and National Assurance Title, Inc. (collectively referred to as "Reltco"), two companies under common control acquired on February 1, 2017, that provide nationwide title agency and settlement services;

• Live Oak Clean Energy Financing LLC, formed in November 2016 for the purpose of providing financing to entities for renewable energy applications;

• Canapi, Inc (formerly Live Oak Ventures, Inc.), formed in August 2016 for the purpose of investing in businesses that align with the Company's strategic initiative to be a leader in financial technology;

• Live Oak Grove, LLC, opened in September 2015 for the purpose of providing Company employees and business visitors an on-site restaurant location;

• Government Loan Solutions, Inc. ("GLS"), a management and technology consulting firm that specializes in the settlement, accounting, and securitization processes for government guaranteed loans, including loans originated under the SBA 7(a) loan program and USDA-guaranteed loans; and

• 504 Fund Advisors, LLC ("504FA"), formed to serve as the investment advisor to the 504 Fund, a closed-end mutual fund organized to invest in SBA section 504 loans.

In 2010, the Bank formed Live Oak Number One, Inc., a wholly owned subsidiary, to hold properties foreclosed on by the Bank.

## SUPERVISION AND REGULATION

### Federal Bank Holding Company Regulation and Structure

As a registered bank holding company, LOB is subject to regulation under the Bank Holding Company Act, or BHCA, and to the supervision, examination and reporting requirements of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System (the "Federal Reserve"). The Bank is a North Carolina-chartered commercial bank and is subject to regulation, supervision and examination by the FDIC and the North Carolina Commissioner of Banks, or NCCOB.

## Table of Contents

The BHCA requires every bank holding company to obtain the prior approval of the Federal Reserve before: it may acquire direct or indirect ownership or control of any voting shares of any bank if, after the acquisition, the bank holding company will directly or indirectly own or control more than 5% of the voting shares of the bank; it or any of its subsidiaries, other than a bank, may acquire all or substantially all of the assets of any bank; or it may merge or consolidate with any other bank holding company.

The BHCA further provides that the Federal Reserve may not approve any transaction that would result in a monopoly or that would substantially lessen competition in the banking business, unless the public interest in meeting the needs of the communities to be served outweighs the anti-competitive effects. The Federal Reserve is also required to consider the financial and managerial resources and future prospects of the bank holding companies and banks involved and the convenience and needs of the communities to be served. Consideration of financial resources generally focuses on capital adequacy, and consideration of convenience and needs issues focuses, in part, on the performance under the Community Reinvestment Act of 1977, both of which are discussed elsewhere in more detail. Subject to various exceptions, the BHCA and the Change in Bank Control Act, together with related regulations, require Federal Reserve approval prior to any person or company acquiring “control” of a bank holding company. Control is conclusively presumed to exist if an individual or company acquires 25% or more of any class of voting securities of a bank holding company. Control is also presumed to exist, although rebuttable, if a person or company acquires 10% or more, but less than 25%, of any class of voting securities and either:

the bank holding company has registered securities under Section 12 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act; or

no other person owns a greater percentage of that class of voting securities immediately after the transaction.

LOB's common stock is registered under Section 12 of the Exchange Act. The regulations provide a procedure for challenging rebuttable presumptions of control.

The BHCA generally prohibits a bank holding company from retaining direct or indirect ownership or control of any voting shares of any company which is not a bank or bank holding company or engaging in activities other than banking, managing or controlling banks or other permissible subsidiaries and acquiring or retaining direct or indirect control of any company engaged in any activities other than activities closely related to banking or managing or controlling banks. In determining whether a particular activity is permissible, the Federal Reserve considers whether performing the activity can be expected to produce benefits to the public that outweigh possible adverse effects, such as undue concentration of resources, decreased or unfair competition, conflicts of interest or unsound banking practices. The Federal Reserve has the power to order a bank holding company or its subsidiaries to terminate any activity or control of any subsidiary when the continuation of the activity or control constitutes a serious risk to the financial safety, soundness or stability of any bank subsidiary of that bank holding company.

Under the BHCA, a bank holding company may file an election with the Federal Reserve to be treated as a financial holding company and engage in an expanded list of financial activities. The election must be accompanied by a certification that all of the company's insured depository institution subsidiaries are “well capitalized” and “well managed.” Additionally, the Community Reinvestment Act of 1977 rating of each subsidiary bank must be satisfactory or better.

If, after becoming a financial holding company and undertaking activities not permissible for a bank holding company, the company fails to continue to meet any of the prerequisites for financial holding company status, the company must enter into an agreement with the Federal Reserve to comply with all applicable capital and management requirements. If the company does not return to compliance within 180 days, the Federal Reserve may order the company to divest its subsidiary banks or the company may discontinue or divest investments in companies engaged in activities permissible only for a bank holding company that has elected to be treated as a financial holding company. LOB has filed an election and became a financial holding company in 2016.

Under Federal Reserve policy and as codified by the Dodd-Frank Act, the Company is expected to act as a source of financial strength for Live Oak Bank and to commit resources to support Live Oak Bank. This support may be required at times when LOB might not be inclined to provide it or it might not be in LOB's best interests or the best interests of its shareholders. In addition, any capital loans made by the Company to Live Oak Bank will be repaid only after Live Oak Bank's deposits and various other obligations are repaid in full.



Table of Contents

Live Oak Bank is also subject to numerous state and federal statutes and regulations that affect its business, activities and operations and is supervised and examined by state and federal bank regulatory agencies. The FDIC and the NCCOB regularly examine the operations of Live Oak Bank and are given the authority to approve or disapprove mergers, consolidations, the establishment of branches and similar corporate actions. These agencies also have the power to prevent the continuance or development of unsafe or unsound banking practices or other violations of law.

**Bank Merger Act**

Section 18(c) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act, popularly known as the “Bank Merger Act,” requires the prior written approval of appropriate federal bank regulatory agencies before any bank may (i) merge or consolidate with, (ii) purchase or otherwise acquire the assets of, or (iii) assume the deposit liabilities of, another bank if the resulting institution is to be a state nonmember bank.

The Bank Merger Act prohibits the applicable federal bank regulatory agency from approving any proposed merger transaction that would result in a monopoly, or would further a combination or conspiracy to monopolize or to attempt to monopolize the business of banking in any part of the United States. Similarly, the Bank Merger Act prohibits the applicable federal bank regulatory agency from approving a proposed merger transaction whose effect in any section of the country may be substantially to lessen competition, or to tend to create a monopoly, or which in any other manner would be in restraint of trade. An exception may be made in the case of a merger transaction whose effect would be to substantially lessen competition, tend to create a monopoly, or otherwise restrain trade, if the applicable federal bank regulatory agency finds that the anticompetitive effects of the proposed transaction are clearly outweighed in the public interest by the probable effect of the transaction in meeting the convenience and needs of the community to be served.

In every proposed merger transaction, the applicable federal bank regulatory agency must also consider the financial and managerial resources and future prospects of the existing and proposed institutions, the convenience and needs of the community to be served, and the effectiveness of each insured depository institution involved in the proposed merger transaction in combating money-laundering activities, including in overseas branches.

**State Law**

Live Oak Bank is subject to extensive supervision and regulation by the NCCOB. The NCCOB oversees state laws that set specific requirements for bank capital and that regulate deposits in, and loans and investments by, banks, including the amounts, types, and in some cases, rates. The NCCOB supervises and performs periodic examinations of North Carolina-chartered banks to assure compliance with state banking statutes and regulations, and banks are required to make regular reports to the NCCOB describing in detail their resources, assets, liabilities, and financial condition. Among other things, the NCCOB regulates mergers and consolidations of state-chartered banks, capital requirements for banks, loans to officers and directors, record keeping, types and amounts of loans and investments, and the establishment of branches.

The NCCOB has extensive enforcement authority over North Carolina banks. Such authority includes the ability to issue cease and desist orders and to seek civil money penalties. The NCCOB may also take possession of a North Carolina bank in various circumstances, including for a violation of its charter or of applicable laws, operating in an unsafe and unsound manner, or as a result of an impairment of its capital, and may appoint a receiver.

The NCCOB also enforces specific requirements for bank capital, the payment of dividends, loans to officers and directors, record keeping, and types and amounts of loans and investments made by commercial banks.

The Company is also required to maintain registration as a bank holding company with the NCCOB. Subject to certain exceptions, the Company may not acquire control over another bank or bank holding company or consummate a merger or other combination transaction with another company without the prior approval of the NCCOB. The NCCOB also has authority to assert civil money penalties against a holding company if the NCCOB determines such holding company to be in violation of any banking laws and the holding company fails to comply with an NCCOB order to cease and desist from such violations of law.

## Table of Contents

### Payment of Dividends and Other Restrictions

The Company is a legal entity separate and distinct from the Bank. While there are various legal and regulatory limitations under federal and state law on the extent to which banks can pay dividends or otherwise supply funds to holding companies, the principal source of cash revenues for the Company is dividends from the Bank. The relevant federal and state regulatory agencies have authority to prohibit a state bank or bank holding company, which would include the Bank and the Company, from engaging in what, in the opinion of such regulatory body, constitutes an unsafe or unsound practice in conducting its business. The payment of dividends could, depending upon the financial condition of a bank, be deemed to constitute an unsafe or unsound practice in conducting its business.

North Carolina commercial banks, such as Live Oak Bank, are subject to legal limitations on the amounts of dividends they are permitted to pay. Specifically, an insured depository institution, such as Live Oak Bank, is prohibited from making capital distributions, including the payment of dividends, if, after making such distribution, the institution would become “undercapitalized” (as such term is defined in the applicable law and regulations).

The Federal Reserve has issued a policy statement on the payment of cash dividends by bank holding companies, which expresses the Federal Reserve’s view that a bank holding company should pay cash dividends only to the extent that the holding company’s net income for the past four quarters is sufficient to cover both the cash dividends and a rate of earnings retention that is consistent with the holding company’s capital needs, asset quality and overall financial condition. The Federal Reserve also indicated that it would be inappropriate for a holding company experiencing serious financial problems to borrow funds to pay dividends. Furthermore, under the prompt corrective action regulations adopted by the Federal Reserve, the Federal Reserve may prohibit a bank holding company from paying any dividends if any of the holding company’s bank subsidiaries are classified as undercapitalized.

A bank holding company is required to give the Federal Reserve prior written notice of any purchase or redemption of its outstanding equity securities if the gross consideration for the purchase or redemption, when combined with the net consideration paid for all such purchases or redemptions during the preceding 12 months, is equal to 10% or more of its consolidated net worth. The Federal Reserve may disapprove such a purchase or redemption if it determines that the proposal would constitute an unsafe or unsound practice or would violate any law, regulation, Federal Reserve order or any condition imposed by, or written agreement with, the Federal Reserve.

### Capital Adequacy

The Company must comply with the Federal Reserve’s established capital adequacy standards, and Live Oak Bank is required to comply with the capital adequacy standards established by the FDIC. The Federal Reserve has promulgated two basic measures of capital adequacy for bank holding companies: a risk-based measure and a leverage measure. A bank holding company must satisfy all applicable capital standards to be considered in compliance.

The risk-based capital standards are designed to make regulatory capital requirements more sensitive to differences in risk profile among banks and bank holding companies, account for off-balance-sheet exposure and minimize disincentives for holding liquid assets.

Assets and off-balance-sheet items are assigned to broad risk categories, each with appropriate weights. The resulting capital ratios represent capital as a percentage of total risk-weighted assets and off-balance-sheet items. Under applicable capital standards the minimum risk-based capital ratios are a common equity Tier 1 capital to risk-weighted assets ratio of 4.5%, a Tier 1 capital to risk-weighted assets ratio of 6%, and a total capital to risk-weighted assets ratio of 8%. In addition, to avoid restrictions on capital distributions and discretionary bonus payments, the Company and the Bank are required to meet a capital conservation buffer of common equity Tier 1 capital in addition to the minimum common equity Tier 1 capital ratio. The capital conservation buffer is being phased in from January 1, 2016 until January 1, 2019, at which point it will be set at 2.5% common equity Tier 1 capital to risk-weighted assets, which sits “on top” of the 4.5% minimum common equity Tier 1 to risk-weighted assets ratio. Common equity Tier 1 capital is predominantly comprised of retained earnings and common stock instruments (that meet strict delineated criteria), net of treasury stock, and after making necessary capital deductions and adjustments. Tier 1 capital is comprised of common equity Tier 1 capital plus Additional Tier 1 capital, which consists of noncumulative perpetual preferred stock and similar instruments meeting specified eligibility criteria and “TARP” preferred stock and other instruments issued under the Emergency Economic Stabilization Act of 2008. Total capital is comprised of Tier 1 capital plus Tier

2 capital, which consists of subordinated debt with a minimum original maturity of at least five years and a limited amount of loan loss reserves.

At December 31, 2017, the Company's risk-based capital ratios, as calculated under applicable capital standards were 17.81% common equity Tier 1 capital to risk weighted assets, 17.81% Tier 1 capital to risk weighted assets, and 18.91% total capital to risk weighted assets.

5

---

## Table of Contents

In addition, the Federal Reserve has established minimum leverage ratio guidelines for bank holding companies. These guidelines provide for a minimum ratio of Tier 1 capital to average total on-balance sheet assets, less goodwill and certain other intangible assets, of 4% for bank holding companies. The Company's ratio at December 31, 2017 was 15.50% compared to 12.00% at December 31, 2016. The guidelines also provide that bank holding companies experiencing internal growth or making acquisitions will be expected to maintain strong capital positions substantially above the minimum supervisory levels without significant reliance on intangible assets. Furthermore, the Federal Reserve has indicated that it will consider a "tangible Tier 1 Capital leverage ratio" and other indications of capital strength in evaluating proposals for expansion or new activities.

Failure to meet capital guidelines could subject a bank to a variety of enforcement remedies, including issuance of a capital directive, the termination of deposit insurance by the FDIC, a prohibition on taking brokered deposits and certain other restrictions on its business. As described below, the FDIC can impose substantial additional restrictions upon FDIC-insured depository institutions that fail to meet applicable capital requirements.

The Federal Deposit Insurance Act, or FDI Act, requires the federal bank regulatory agencies to take "prompt corrective action" if a depository institution does not meet minimum capital requirements. The FDI Act establishes five capital tiers: "well capitalized," "adequately capitalized," "undercapitalized," "significantly undercapitalized" and "critically undercapitalized." A depository institution's capital tier will depend upon how its capital levels compare to various relevant capital measures and certain other factors, as established by regulation.

The federal bank regulatory agencies have adopted regulations establishing relevant capital measures and relevant capital levels applicable to FDIC-insured banks. The relevant capital measures are the Total Risk-Based Capital ratio, Tier 1 Risk-Based Capital ratio, Common Equity Tier 1 Capital ratio and the leverage ratio. Under current regulations, an FDIC-insured bank was:

"well capitalized" if it has a Total Risk-Based Capital ratio of 10% or greater, a Tier 1 Risk-Based Capital ratio of 8% or greater, a Common Equity Tier 1 Capital ratio of 6.5% or greater and a leverage ratio of 5% or greater and is not subject to any order or written directive by the appropriate regulatory authority to meet and maintain a specific capital level for any capital measure;

"adequately capitalized" if it has a Total Risk-Based Capital ratio of 8% or greater, a Tier 1 Risk-Based Capital ratio of 6% or greater, a Common Equity Tier 1 Capital ratio of 4.5% or greater and a leverage ratio of 4% or greater and is not "well capitalized";

"undercapitalized" if it has a Total Risk-Based Capital ratio of less than 8%, a Tier 1 Risk-Based Capital ratio of less than 6%, a Common Equity Tier 1 Capital ratio of less than 4% or a leverage ratio of less than 4%;

"significantly undercapitalized" if it has a Total Risk-Based Capital ratio of less than 6%, a Tier 1 Risk-Based Capital ratio of less than 4%, a Common Equity Tier 1 Capital ratio of less than 3% or a leverage ratio of less than 3%; and

"critically undercapitalized" if its tangible equity is equal to or less than 2% of average quarterly tangible assets. An institution may be downgraded to, or deemed to be in, a capital category that is lower than is indicated by its capital ratios if it is determined to be in an unsafe or unsound condition or if it receives an unsatisfactory examination rating with respect to certain matters. As of December 31, 2017, Live Oak Bank had capital levels that qualify as "well capitalized" under the applicable regulations.

The FDI Act generally prohibits an FDIC-insured bank from making a capital distribution (including payment of a dividend) or paying any management fee to its holding company if the bank is or would thereafter be "undercapitalized." "Undercapitalized" banks are subject to growth limitations and are required to submit a capital restoration plan. The federal regulators may not accept a capital restoration plan without determining, among other things, that the plan is based on realistic assumptions and is likely to succeed in restoring the bank's capital. In addition, for a capital restoration plan to be acceptable, the bank's parent holding company must guarantee that the institution will comply with such capital restoration plan until the institution has been adequately capitalized on average during each of four consecutive calendar quarters. The aggregate liability of the parent holding company under such guaranty is limited to the lesser of: (i) an amount equal to 5% of the bank's total assets at the time it became "undercapitalized"; and (ii) the amount which is necessary (or would have been necessary) to bring the institution into compliance with all capital standards applicable with respect to such institution as of the time it fails to comply with the plan. If a bank fails to

submit an acceptable plan, it is treated as if it is “significantly undercapitalized.”

“Significantly undercapitalized” insured banks may be subject to a number of requirements and restrictions, including orders to sell sufficient voting stock to become “adequately capitalized,” requirements to reduce total assets and the cessation of receipt of deposits from correspondent banks. “Critically undercapitalized” institutions are subject to the appointment of a receiver or conservator. A bank that is not “well capitalized” is also subject to certain limitations relating to brokered deposits.

6

---



## Table of Contents

The regulatory capital framework under which the Company and Live Oak Bank operate changed in significant respects as a result of the Dodd-Frank Act, which was enacted in July 2010, and other regulations, including the separate regulatory capital requirements put forth by the Basel Committee on Banking Supervision, commonly known “Basel III.”

In July 2013, the Federal Reserve, FDIC and Office of the Comptroller of the Currency approved final rules that established an integrated regulatory capital framework that addressed shortcomings in certain capital requirements. The rules implemented in the United States the Basel III regulatory capital reforms from the Basel Committee on Banking Supervision and certain changes required by the Dodd-Frank Act. These rule began to apply to the Company effective January 1, 2015.

The major provisions of the rule applicable to the Company are:

The rule implements higher minimum capital requirements, includes a new common equity Tier1 capital requirement, and establishes criteria that instruments must meet in order to be considered Common Equity Tier 1 capital, additional Tier 1 capital, or Tier 2 capital. These enhancements are intended to both improve the quality and increase the quantity of capital required to be held by banking organizations. The minimum capital to risk-weighted assets (“RWA”) requirements under the rule are a common equity Tier 1 capital ratio of 4.5% and a Tier 1 capital ratio of 6.0%, which is an increase from 4.0%, and a total capital ratio of 8.0%. The minimum leverage ratio (Tier 1 capital to total assets) is 4.0%. The rule maintained the general structure of the current prompt corrective action, or PCA, framework while incorporating these increased minimum requirements.

The rule implements changes to the definition of capital. Among the most important changes are stricter eligibility criteria for regulatory capital instruments that disallow the inclusion of instruments such as trust preferred securities in Tier 1 capital going forward, and constraints on the inclusion of minority interests, mortgage-servicing assets (“MSAs”), deferred tax assets (“DTAs”), and certain investments in the capital of unconsolidated financial institutions. In addition, the rule requires that certain regulatory capital deductions be made from common equity Tier 1 capital.

Under the rule, in order to avoid limitations on capital distributions, including dividend payments and certain discretionary bonus payments to executive officers, a banking organization must hold a capital conservation buffer composed of common equity Tier 1 capital above its minimum risk-based capital requirements. The buffer is measured relative to RWA. A three-year phase-in of the capital conservation buffer requirements began on January 1, 2016. A banking organization with a buffer greater than 2.5% would not be subject to limits on capital distributions or discretionary bonus payments; however, a banking organization with a buffer of less than 2.5% would be subject to increasingly stringent limitations as the buffer approaches zero. The rule also prohibits a banking organization from making distributions or discretionary bonus payments during any quarter if its eligible retained income is negative in that quarter and its capital conservation buffer ratio was less than 2.5% at the beginning of the quarter. When the rule is fully phased in, the minimum capital requirements plus the capital conservation buffer will exceed the PCA well-capitalized thresholds.

The rule also increases the risk weights for past-due loans, certain commercial real estate loans, and some equity exposures, and makes selected other changes in risk weights and credit conversion factors.

On July 9, 2013, the FDIC confirmed that it would join in the Basel III standards and, on September 10, 2013, issued an “interim final rule” applicable to the Bank that is identical in substance to the final rules issued by the Federal Reserve described above. The Bank was required to comply with the interim final rule beginning on January 1, 2015. Compliance by LOB and the Bank with these capital requirements affects their respective operations by increasing the amount of capital required to conduct operations.

### Acquisitions

The Company must comply with numerous laws related to any potential acquisition activity. Under the BHCA, a bank holding company may not directly or indirectly acquire ownership or control of more than 5% of the voting shares or substantially all of the assets of any bank or merge or consolidate with another bank holding company without the prior approval of the Federal Reserve. The acquisition of non-banking companies is also regulated by the Federal Reserve. Current federal law authorizes interstate acquisitions of banks and bank holding companies without geographic limitation. Furthermore, a bank headquartered in one state is authorized to merge with a bank

headquartered in another state, as long as neither of the states has opted out of such interstate merger authority prior to such date, and subject to any state requirement that the target bank shall have been in existence and operating for a minimum period of time, not to exceed five years, and to certain deposit market-share limitations. After a bank has established branches in a state through an interstate merger transaction, the bank may establish and acquire additional branches at any location in the state where a bank headquartered in that state could have established or acquired branches under applicable federal or state law. Additionally, since passage of the Dodd-Frank Act, a bank is now permitted to open a de novo branch in any state if that state would permit a bank organized in that state to open a branch.

## Table of Contents

### Restrictions on Affiliate Transactions

Sections 23A and 23B of the Federal Reserve Act establish parameters for a bank to conduct “covered transactions” with its affiliates, with the objective of limiting risk to the insured bank. Generally, Sections 23A and 23B (i) limit the extent to which the bank or its subsidiaries may engage in “covered transactions” with any one affiliate to an amount equal to 10% of such bank’s capital stock and surplus, and limit the aggregate of all such transactions with all affiliates to an amount equal to 20% of such capital stock and surplus and (ii) require that all such transactions be on terms substantially the same, or at least as favorable, to the bank or subsidiary as those that would be provided to a non-affiliate. The term “covered transaction” includes the making of loans to the affiliate, purchase of assets from the affiliate, issuance of a guaranty on behalf of the affiliate and several other types of transactions.

The Dodd-Frank Act imposed additional restrictions on transactions between affiliates by amending these two sections of the Federal Reserve Act. Under the Dodd-Frank Act, restrictions on transactions with affiliates are enhanced by (i) including among “covered transactions” transactions between bank and affiliate-advised investment funds; (ii) including among “covered transactions” transactions between a bank and an affiliate with respect to securities repurchase agreements and derivatives transactions; (iii) adopting stricter collateral rules; and (iv) imposing tighter restrictions on transactions between banks and their financial subsidiaries.

### FDIC Insurance Assessments

The assessment rate paid by each DIF member institution is based on its relative risks of default as measured by regulatory capital ratios and other factors. Specifically, the assessment rate is based on the institution’s capitalization risk category and supervisory subgroup category. An institution’s capitalization risk category is based on the FDIC’s determination of whether the institution is well capitalized, adequately capitalized or less than adequately capitalized. Live Oak Bank’s insurance assessments during 2017 and 2016 were \$3.2 million and \$1.4 million, respectively. An institution’s supervisory subgroup category is based on the FDIC’s assessment of the financial condition of the institution and the probability that FDIC intervention or other corrective action will be required. The FDIC may terminate insurance of deposits upon a finding that an institution has engaged in unsafe and unsound practices, is in an unsafe or unsound condition to continue operations, or has violated any applicable law, regulation, rule, order or condition imposed by the FDIC.

The Dodd-Frank Act expanded the base for FDIC insurance assessments, requiring that assessments be based on the average consolidated total assets less tangible equity capital of a financial institution. On February 7, 2011, the FDIC approved a final rule to implement the foregoing provision of the Dodd-Frank Act. Among other things, the final rule revised the assessment rate schedule to provide initial base assessment rates ranging from 5 to 35 basis points, subject to adjustments which could increase or decrease the total base assessment rates. The FDIC has three possible adjustments to an institution’s initial base assessment rate: (1) a decrease of up to five basis points (or 50% of the initial base assessment rate) for long-term unsecured debt, including senior unsecured debt (other than debt guaranteed under the Temporary Liquidity Guarantee Program) and subordinated debt; (2) an increase for holding long-term unsecured or subordinated debt issued by other insured depository institutions known as the Depository Institution Debt Adjustment; and (3) for institutions not well rated and well capitalized, an increase not to exceed 10 basis points for brokered deposits in excess of 10 percent of domestic deposits.

The law also gives the FDIC enhanced discretion to set assessment rate levels.

The FDIC also collects a deposit-based assessment from insured financial institutions on behalf of the Financing Corporation, or the FICO. The funds from these assessments are used to service debt issued by FICO in its capacity as a financial vehicle for the Federal Savings & Loan Insurance Corporation. The FICO assessment rate is set quarterly and was .135 basis points for each the first three quarters and .115 basis points for the fourth quarter of 2017, per \$100 of assessable deposits. These assessments will continue until the debt matures in 2018 through 2019.

### Community Reinvestment Act

The Community Reinvestment Act requires federal bank regulatory agencies to encourage financial institutions to meet the credit needs of low and moderate-income borrowers in their local communities. An institution’s size and business strategy determines the type of examination that it will receive. Large, retail-oriented institutions are examined using a performance-based lending, investment and service test. Small institutions are examined using a

streamlined approach. All institutions may opt to be evaluated under a strategic plan formulated with community input and pre-approved by the bank regulatory agency.

8

---

## Table of Contents

The Community Reinvestment Act regulations provide for certain disclosure obligations. Each institution must post a notice advising the public of its right to comment to the institution and its regulator on the institution's Community Reinvestment Act performance and to review the institution's Community Reinvestment Act public file. Each lending institution must maintain for public inspection a file that includes a listing of branch locations and services, a summary of lending activity, a map of its communities and any written comments from the public on its performance in meeting community credit needs. The Community Reinvestment Act requires public disclosure of the regulators' written Community Reinvestment Act evaluations of financial institutions. This promotes enforcement of Community Reinvestment Act requirements by providing the public with the status of a particular institution's community reinvestment record.

The Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act made various changes to the Community Reinvestment Act. Among other changes, Community Reinvestment Act agreements with private parties must be disclosed and annual Community Reinvestment Act reports relating to such agreements must be made available to a bank's primary federal regulator. A bank holding company will not be permitted to become a financial holding company and no new activities authorized under the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act may be commenced by a holding company or by a bank financial subsidiary if any of its bank subsidiaries received less than a satisfactory Community Reinvestment Act rating in its latest Community Reinvestment Act examination.

### The Volcker Rule

Under provisions of the Dodd-Frank Act referred to as the "Volcker Rule," certain limitations are placed on the ability of insured depository institutions and their affiliates to engage in sponsoring, investing in and transacting with certain investment funds, including hedge funds and private equity funds. The Volcker Rule also places restrictions on proprietary trading, which could impact certain hedging activities. The Volcker Rule became fully effective in July 2015, and banking entities had until July 21, 2017, to divest certain legacy investments in covered funds.

### Additional Legislative and Regulatory Matters

The Uniting and Strengthening America by Providing Appropriate Tools Required to Intercept and Obstruct Terrorism Act of 2001, or the USA PATRIOT Act, requires each financial institution: (i) to establish an anti-money laundering program; (ii) to establish due diligence policies, procedures and controls with respect to its private banking accounts involving foreign individuals and certain foreign banks; and (iii) to avoid establishing, maintaining, administering or managing correspondent accounts in the United States for, or on behalf of, foreign banks that do not have a physical presence in any country. The USA PATRIOT Act also requires the Secretary of the Treasury to prescribe by regulation minimum standards that financial institutions must follow to verify the identity of customers, both foreign and domestic, when a customer opens an account. In addition, the USA PATRIOT Act contains a provision encouraging cooperation among financial institutions, regulatory authorities and law enforcement authorities with respect to individuals, entities and organizations engaged in, or reasonably suspected of engaging in, terrorist acts or money laundering activities.

Sarbanes-Oxley mandates for public companies, such as the Company, a variety of reforms intended to address corporate and accounting fraud and provides for the establishment of the PCAOB, which enforces auditing, quality control and independence standards for firms that audit SEC-reporting companies. Sarbanes-Oxley imposes higher standards for auditor independence and restricts the provision of consulting services by auditing firms to companies they audit and requires that certain audit partners be rotated periodically. It also requires chief executive officers and chief financial officers, or their equivalents, to certify the accuracy of periodic reports filed with the SEC, subject to civil and criminal penalties if they knowingly or willfully violate this certification requirement, and increases the oversight and authority of audit committees of publicly traded companies.

### Fiscal and Monetary Policy

Banking is a business which depends on interest rate differentials for success. In general, the difference between the interest paid by a bank on its deposits and its other borrowings, and the interest received by a bank on its loans and securities holdings, constitutes a significant portion of a bank's earnings. Thus, the Company's earnings and growth will be subject to the influence of economic conditions generally, both domestic and foreign, and also to the monetary and fiscal policies of the United States and its agencies, particularly the Federal Reserve. The Federal Reserve

regulates the supply of money through various means, including open market dealings in United States government securities, the discount rate at which banks may borrow from the Federal Reserve and the reserve requirements on deposits. The nature and timing of any changes in such policies and their effect on the Company's business and results of operations cannot be predicted.

Current and future legislation and the policies established by federal and state regulatory authorities will affect the Company's future operations. Banking legislation and regulations may limit the Company's growth and the return to its investors by restricting certain of its activities.

## Table of Contents

In addition, capital requirements could be changed and have the effect of restricting the activities of the Company or requiring additional capital to be maintained. The Company cannot predict with certainty what changes, if any, will be made to existing federal and state legislation and regulations or the effect that such changes may have on the Company's business and results of operations.

### Real Estate Lending Evaluations

The federal regulators have adopted uniform standards for evaluations of loans secured by real estate or made to finance improvements to real estate. Banks are required to establish and maintain written internal real estate lending policies consistent with safe and sound banking practices and appropriate to the size of the institution and the nature and scope of its operations. The regulations establish loan to value ratio limitations on real estate loans. Live Oak Bank's respective loan policies establish limits on loan to value ratios that are equal to or less than those established in such regulations.

### Commercial Real Estate Concentrations

Lending operations of commercial banks may be subject to enhanced scrutiny by federal banking regulators based on a bank's concentration of commercial real estate, or CRE, loans. On December 6, 2006, the federal banking regulators issued final guidance to remind financial institutions of the risk posed by commercial real estate, or CRE, lending concentrations. CRE loans generally include land development, construction loans, and loans secured by multifamily property, and nonfarm, nonresidential real property where the primary source of repayment is derived from rental income associated with the property. The guidance prescribes the following guidelines for bank examiners to help identify institutions that are potentially exposed to significant CRE risk and may warrant greater supervisory scrutiny: total reported loans for construction, land development and other land, or C&D, represent 100% or more of the institution's total capital; or total CRE loans represent 300% or more of the institution's total capital, and the outstanding balance of the institution's CRE loan portfolio has increased over 50% or more during the prior 36 months.

As of December 31, 2017, the Bank's C&D concentration as a percentage of bank capital totaled 182.3% and the Bank's CRE concentration, net of owner-occupied loans, as a percentage of capital totaled 112.3%.

### Limitations on Incentive Compensation

In October 2009, the Federal Reserve issued proposed guidance designed to help ensure that incentive compensation policies at banking organizations do not encourage excessive risk-taking or undermine the safety and soundness of the organization. In connection with the proposed guidance, the Federal Reserve announced that it would review incentive compensation arrangements of bank holding companies such as the Company as part of the regular, risk-focused supervisory process.

In June 2010, the Federal Reserve issued the incentive compensation guidance in final form and was joined by the FDIC, and the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency. The final guidance, which covers all employees that have the ability to materially affect the risk profile of an organization, either individually or as part of a group, is based upon the key principles that a banking organization's incentive compensation arrangements should (i) provide employees incentives that appropriately balance risk and reward and, thus, do not encourage risk-taking beyond the organization's ability to effectively identify and manage risks, (ii) be compatible with effective internal controls and risk management, and (iii) be supported by strong corporate governance, including active and effective oversight by the organization's board of directors. Any deficiencies in compensation practices that are identified may be incorporated into the organization's supervisory ratings, which can affect its ability to make acquisitions or perform other actions. The guidance provides that enforcement actions may be taken against a banking organization if its incentive compensation arrangements or related risk-management control or governance processes pose a risk to the organization's safety and soundness and the organization is not taking prompt and effective measures to correct the deficiencies.

As required by the Dodd-Frank Act, in March 2011 the SEC and the federal bank regulatory agencies (including the Federal Reserve and the FDIC) proposed regulations that would prohibit financial institutions with assets of at least \$1 billion from maintaining executive compensation arrangements that encourage inappropriate risk taking by providing excessive compensation or that could lead to material financial loss. These proposed regulations incorporate the

principles discussed in the Federal Reserve's June 2010 incentive compensation guidance. In May 2016, the federal bank regulatory agencies replaced the regulations proposed in 2011 with a new proposal. If the regulations are adopted in the form proposed, they will impose limitations on the manner in which the Company may structure compensation for its executives. The comment period for these proposed regulations has closed, but a final rule has not been published.



## Table of Contents

### Economic Environment

The policies of regulatory authorities, including the monetary policy of the Federal Reserve, have a significant effect on the operating results of bank holding companies and their subsidiaries. Among the means available to the Federal Reserve to affect the money supply are open market operations in U.S. government securities, changes in the discount rate on member bank borrowings and changes in reserve requirements against member bank deposits. These means are used in varying combinations to influence overall growth and distribution of bank loans, investments and deposits, and their use may affect interest rates charged on loans or paid on deposits. The Federal Reserve's monetary policies have materially affected the operating results of commercial banks in the past and are expected to continue to do so in the future. The nature of future monetary policies and the effect of these policies on the Company's business and earnings cannot be predicted.

### Evolving Legislation and Regulatory Action

The Dodd-Frank Act was signed into law in 2010 and implemented many new changes in the way financial and banking operations are regulated in the United States, including through the creation of a new resolution authority, mandating higher capital and liquidity requirements, requiring banks to pay increased fees to regulatory agencies and numerous other provisions intended to strengthen the financial services sector. Pursuant to the Dodd-Frank Act the Financial Stability Oversight Council, or the FSOC, was created and is charged with overseeing and coordinating the efforts of the primary U.S. financial regulatory agencies (including the Federal Reserve, the FDIC and the SEC) in establishing regulations to address systemic financial stability concerns. Under the Dodd-Frank Act, the Consumer Financial Protection Bureau, or the CFPB, was also created as a new consumer financial services regulator. The CFPB is authorized to prevent unfair, deceptive and abusive practices and ensure that consumers have access to markets for consumer financial products and services and that such markets are fair, transparent and competitive.

In 2017, both the House of Representatives and the Senate introduced legislation that would repeal or modify provisions of the Dodd-Frank Act and significantly impact financial services regulation. Although the bills vary in content, certain key aspects include revisions to rules related to mortgage loans, delayed implementation of rules related to the Home Mortgage Disclosure Act, and reform and simplifications of certain Volcker Rule requirements. New laws or regulations or changes to existing laws and regulations, including changes in interpretation or enforcement, could materially adversely affect the Company's financial condition or results of operations. Many aspects of the Dodd-Frank Act are subject to further rulemaking and will take effect over several years. As a result, the overall financial impact on the Company and Live Oak Bank cannot be anticipated at this time.

### February 3, 2017, Executive Order

On February 3, 2017, the President of the United States issued an executive order identifying "core principles" for the administration's financial services regulatory policy and directing the Secretary of the Treasury, in consultation with the heads of other financial regulatory agencies, to evaluate how the current regulatory framework promotes or inhibits the principles and what actions have been, and are being, taken to promote the principles. In response to the executive order, on June 12, 2017, October 6, 2017 and October 26, 2017, respectively, the U.S. Department of the Treasury issued the first three of four reports recommending a number of comprehensive changes in the current regulatory system for U.S. depository institutions, the U.S. capital markets and the U.S. asset management and insurance industries.

### Federal and State Taxation

The Company and its subsidiaries file a consolidated federal income tax return and separate state income tax returns in North Carolina. All the returns are filed on a calendar year basis. Consolidated income tax returns have the effect of eliminating intercompany income and expense, including dividends, from the computation of consolidated taxable income for the taxable year in which the items occur. In accordance with an income tax sharing agreement, income tax charges or credits are allocated among Live Oak and its subsidiaries on the basis of their respective taxable income or taxable loss that is included in the consolidated income tax return.

Banks and bank holding companies are subject to federal and state income taxes in essentially the same manner as other corporations. Taxable income is generally calculated under applicable sections of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code"), with some modifications required by state law and the December 2017 tax legislation

commonly referred to as the Tax Cut and Jobs Act (the "Tax Act"). Although Live Oak's federal income tax liability is determined under provisions of the Code, which is applicable to all taxpayers, Sections 581 through 597 of the Code apply specifically to financial institutions.

Table of Contents

Among other things, the new Tax Act (i) establishes a new, flat corporate federal statutory income tax rate of 21%, (ii) eliminates the corporate alternative minimum tax and allows the use of any such carryforwards to offset regular tax liability for any taxable year, (iii) limits the deduction for net interest expense incurred by U.S. corporations, (iv) allows businesses to immediately expense, for tax purposes, the cost of new investments in certain qualified depreciable assets, (v) eliminates or reduces certain deductions related to meals and entertainment expenses, (vi) modifies the limitation on excessive employee remuneration to eliminate the exception for performance-based compensation and clarifies the definition of a covered employee and (vii) limits the deductibility of deposit insurance premiums. The Tax Cuts and Jobs Act also significantly changes U.S. tax law related to foreign operations, however, such changes do not currently impact the Company. Based upon current 2018 projections, the effective tax rate for 2018 is expected to be in the low-to-mid single digits; however, there can be no assurance as to the actual amount because it will be dependent upon the nature and amount of future income and expenses as well as investments generating investment tax credits and transactions with discrete tax effects and any possible changes in the Company's provisional adjustments in revaluing the deferred tax liability at December, 31 2017. The accounting for the impact of the Tax Act is expected to be completed during the fourth quarter of 2018 and the final amount may differ from the provisional amount due to additional analysis, regulatory guidance that may be issued or changes in interpretation.

Table of Contents

Item 1A. RISK FACTORS

An investment in LOB common stock involves certain risks. The following discussion highlights the risks that management believes are material for the Company, but do not necessarily include all the risks that we may face. Additional risks and uncertainties that are not currently known or that management does not currently deem material could also have a material adverse impact on our business, results of our operations and financial condition. You should carefully consider the risk factors and uncertainties described below and elsewhere in this Report in evaluating an investment in LOB's common stock.

Risks Related to Our Business

We may experience increased delinquencies and credit losses, which could have a material adverse effect on our capital, financial condition, and results of operations.

Like other lenders, we face the risk that our customers will not repay their loans. A customer's failure to repay us is usually preceded by missed monthly payments. In some instances, however, a customer may declare bankruptcy prior to missing payments, and, following a borrower filing bankruptcy, a lender's recovery of the credit extended is often limited. Since many of our loans are secured by collateral, we may attempt to seize the collateral if and when a customer defaults on a loan. However, the value of the collateral might not equal the amount of the unpaid loan, and we may be unsuccessful in recovering the remaining balance from our customer. The resolution of nonperforming assets, including the initiation of foreclosure proceedings, requires significant commitments of time from management, which can be detrimental to the performance of their other responsibilities, and which expose us to additional legal costs. Elevated levels of loan delinquencies and bankruptcies in our market areas, generally, and among our customers specifically, can be precursors of future charge-offs and may require us to increase our allowance for loan and lease losses, or ALLL. Higher charge-off rates, delays in the foreclosure process or in obtaining judgments against defaulting borrowers or an increase in our ALLL may negatively impact our overall financial performance, may increase our cost of funds, and could materially adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

SBA lending is an important part of our business. Our SBA lending program is dependent upon the federal government, and we face specific risks associated with originating SBA loans.

Our SBA lending program is dependent upon the federal government. As an SBA Preferred Lender, we enable our clients to obtain SBA loans without being subject to the potentially lengthy SBA approval process necessary for lenders that are not SBA Preferred Lenders. The SBA periodically reviews the lending operations of participating lenders to assess, among other things, whether the lender exhibits prudent risk management. When weaknesses are identified, the SBA may request corrective actions or impose enforcement actions, including revocation of the lender's Preferred Lender status. If we lose our status as a Preferred Lender, we may lose some or all of our customers to lenders who are SBA Preferred Lenders, and as a result we could experience a material adverse effect to our financial results. Any changes to the SBA program, including changes to the level of guarantee provided by the federal government on SBA loans, may also have a material adverse effect on our business.

We generally sell the guaranteed portion of our SBA 7(a) loans in the secondary market. These sales have resulted in premium income for us at the time of sale and created a stream of future servicing income. We may not be able to continue originating these loans or selling them in the secondary market. Furthermore, even if we are able to continue originating and selling SBA 7(a) loans in the secondary market, we might not continue to realize premiums upon the sale of the guaranteed portion of these loans. When we sell the guaranteed portion of our SBA 7(a) loans, we incur credit risk on the non-guaranteed portion of the loans, and if a customer defaults on the non-guaranteed portion of a loan, we share any loss and recovery related to the loan pro-rata with the SBA. If the SBA establishes that a loss on an SBA guaranteed loan is attributable to significant technical deficiencies in the manner in which the loan was originated, funded or serviced by us, the SBA may seek recovery of the principal loss related to the deficiency from us, which could materially adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Table of Contents

The laws, regulations and standard operating procedures that are applicable to SBA loan products may change at any time. For example, effective January 1, 2018, the SBA changed its procedures relating to equity levels required to qualify for an SBA loan. We expect these changes will have an adverse impact on originations, particularly in our Agriculture vertical and other verticals where the borrowers historically have faced challenges meeting equity requirements for eligibility. In March 2018, the Office of Inspector General (the "OIG") for the SBA issued its Evaluation of SBA 7(a) Loans Made to Poultry Farmers. The report summarized the OIG's review of SBA 7(a) loans made to poultry farmers along with its findings and recommendations. Among other things, the OIG report concluded that the loans to poultry farmers it had reviewed did not meet regulatory and SBA requirements for eligibility. The SBA's response to the OIG report suggests that it will review the report and recommendations and determine whether to take any further action. We are still assessing the potential impact of the report and any SBA actions in response. We cannot predict the effects of future changes on our business and profitability. Because government regulation greatly affects the business and financial results of all commercial banks and bank holding companies and especially our organization, changes in the laws, regulations and procedures applicable to SBA loans could adversely affect our ability to operate profitably.

We are dependent upon the use of intellectual property owned by third parties, and any change in our ability to use, or the terms upon which we may use, this intellectual property could have a material adverse effect on our business. The technology-based platform that is pivotal to our success is dependent on the use of the nCino Bank Operating System and Salesforce.com, Inc.'s Force.com cloud computing infrastructure platform. We rely on a non-exclusive license to use nCino's platform. Because our license is non-exclusive, the nCino Bank Operating System is available to other lenders and nothing would prevent our competitors from developing, licensing or using similar technology. Our license currently expires on November 15, 2018. Notwithstanding the term of our agreement, our license may be terminated if we are in material breach of the license and do not cure the breach within 30 days. In addition, nCino relies on a license to use the Salesforce.com platform, and if nCino were unable to maintain its rights under that license, our ability to rely on the nCino license could be adversely affected. We can offer no assurance that we will be able to renew or maintain our license to use the nCino Bank Operating System on terms that are acceptable.

Termination of either of these licenses or the reduction or elimination of our licensed rights may result in our having to negotiate new licenses with less favorable terms, or the inability to obtain access to such licensed technology at all. Similarly, Apiture provides the Bank significant engineering, development, professional and other services under an agreement we signed with Apiture in connection with the closing of the joint venture in October 2017. It would be difficult for the Bank to replace these services with a third party. Notwithstanding the Bank's ownership of 50% of the voting control of Apiture, there can be no assurance that Apiture will continue to provide such services at appropriate service levels or at prices that would be market competitive. If we were to lose access to any of this technology, or were only able to access the technology on less favorable terms, we would not be able to offer our customers the technology-based platform services they seek from us and our business would be materially and adversely affected. A failure in or breach of our operational or security systems, or those of our third party service providers, including as a result of cyber-attacks, could disrupt our business, result in unintentional disclosure or misuse of confidential or proprietary information, damage our reputation, increase our costs and cause losses.

As a financial institution, our operations rely heavily on the secure data processing, storage and transmission of confidential and other information on our computer systems and networks. Any failure, interruption or breach in security or operational integrity of these systems could result in failures or disruptions in our online banking system, customer relationship management, general ledger, deposit and loan servicing and other systems. The security and integrity of our systems and the technology we use could be threatened by a variety of interruptions or information security breaches, including those caused by computer hacking, cyber-attacks, electronic fraudulent activity or attempted theft of financial assets. We may fail to promptly identify or adequately address any such failures, interruptions or security breaches if they do occur. While we have certain protective policies and procedures in place, the nature and sophistication of the threats continue to evolve. We may be required to expend significant additional resources in the future to modify and enhance our protective measures.



Table of Contents

The nature of our business may make it an attractive target and potentially vulnerable to cyber-attacks, computer viruses, physical or electronic break-ins or similar disruptions. The technology-based platform we use processes sensitive data from our borrowers and investors. While we have taken steps to protect confidential information that we have access to, our security measures and the security measures employed by the owners of the technology in the platform that we use could be breached. Any accidental or willful security breaches or other unauthorized access to our systems could cause confidential customer, borrower, employee, vendor, partner or investor information to be stolen and used for criminal purposes. Security breaches or unauthorized access to confidential information could also expose us to liability related to the loss of the information, time-consuming and expensive litigation, and negative publicity. If security measures are breached because of third-party action, employee error, malfeasance or otherwise, or if design flaws in the technology-based platform that we use are exposed and exploited, our relationships with customers, borrowers, employees, vendors, partners and investors could be severely damaged, and we could incur significant liability.

Because techniques used to sabotage or obtain unauthorized access to systems change frequently and generally are not recognized until they are launched against a target, we and our collaborators may be unable to anticipate these techniques or to implement adequate preventative measures. In addition, federal regulators and many federal and state laws and regulations require companies to notify individuals of data security breaches involving their personal data. These mandatory disclosures regarding a security breach are costly to implement and often lead to widespread negative publicity, which may cause customers, borrowers, employees, vendors, partners or investors to lose confidence in the effectiveness of our data security measures. Any security breach, whether actual or perceived, would harm our reputation, we could lose customers, borrowers, employees, vendors, partners, or investors, and our business and operations could be adversely affected.

Additionally, we face the risk of operational disruption, failure, termination or capacity constraints of any of the third parties that facilitate our business activities, including exchanges, clearing agents, clearing houses or other financial intermediaries. Such parties could also be the source of an attack on, or breach of, our operational systems. Any failures, interruptions or security breaches in our information systems could damage our reputation, result in a loss of customer business, result in a violation of privacy or other laws, or expose us to civil litigation, regulatory fines or losses not covered by insurance.

Our business is dependent on the successful and uninterrupted functioning of our information technology and telecommunications systems and third-party providers. The failure of these systems, or the termination of a third-party software license or service agreement on which any of these systems is based, could interrupt our operations. Because our information technology and telecommunications systems interface with and depend on third-party systems, we could experience service denials if demand for such services exceeds capacity or such third-party systems fail or experience interruptions. If significant, sustained or repeated, a system failure or service denial could compromise our ability to operate effectively, damage our reputation, result in a loss of customer business, and/or subject us to additional regulatory scrutiny and possible financial liability, any of which could materially adversely affect our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects, as well as the value of our common stock.

A return of recessionary conditions could result in increases in our level of nonperforming loans and/or reduce demand for our products and services, which could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations. Like all financial institutions, we are subject to certain risks resulting from a weakened economy, such as increased charge-offs and levels of past-due loans and nonperforming assets. Although the U.S. economy has emerged from the severe recession that occurred from 2007 to 2009, economic growth has been slow and uneven, and unemployment levels remain elevated in many areas of the country. In addition, recovery by many businesses has been impaired by lower consumer spending. A return of prolonged deteriorating economic conditions could adversely affect the ability of our customers to repay their loans, the value of our investments, and our ongoing operations, including our equipment leasing and title insurance businesses, costs and profitability. These events may cause us to incur losses and may materially adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.





## Table of Contents

Our loan portfolio mix, which includes owner-occupied commercial real estate loans, could result in increased credit risk in a challenging economy.

Our loan portfolio is concentrated in owner-occupied commercial real estate and owner-occupied commercial business loans. These types of loans generally are viewed as carrying more risk of default than residential real estate loans or certain other types of loans or investments. In fact, the FDIC has issued pronouncements alerting banks of its concern about heavy loan concentrations in certain types of commercial real estate loans, including acquisition, construction and development loans, and heavy loan concentrations in certain geographic segments. Because a portion of our loan portfolio is composed of these types of higher-risk loans, we face an increased risk of nonperforming loans that could result in a loss of earnings from these loans, an increase in the provision for loan and lease losses, or an increase in loan charge-offs, any of which could have a material adverse impact on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

The current economic environment and any deterioration or downturn in the economies or real estate values in the markets we serve could have a material adverse effect on both borrowers' ability to repay their loans and the value of the real property securing those loans. Our ability to recover on defaulted loans would then be diminished, and we would be more likely to suffer losses on defaulted loans. Any of these developments could materially adversely affect our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects.

The fair value of our investment securities can fluctuate due to factors outside of our control.

As of December 31, 2017, the fair value of our investment securities portfolio was approximately \$93 million. Factors beyond our control can significantly influence the fair value of securities in our portfolio and can cause potential adverse changes to the fair value of these securities. These factors include, but are not limited to, rating agency actions in respect of the securities, defaults by the issuer or with respect to the underlying securities, monetary tapering actions by the Federal Reserve, and changes in market interest rates and potential instability in the capital markets. Any of these factors, among others, could cause other-than-temporary impairments and realized or unrealized losses in future periods and declines in other comprehensive income, which could materially and adversely affect our business, results of operations, financial condition and prospects, as well as the value of our common stock. The process for determining whether impairment of a security is other-than-temporary usually requires complex, subjective judgments about the future financial performance and liquidity of the issuer and any collateral underlying the security in order to assess the probability of receiving all contractual principal and interest payments on the security. Our inability to accurately predict the future performance of an issuer or to efficiently respond to changing market conditions could result in a decline in the value of our investment securities portfolio, which could have a material and adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Our allowance for loan losses may prove to be insufficient to cover actual loan losses, which could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

Our future success depends to a significant extent upon the quality of our assets, particularly loans. In originating loans, there is a substantial likelihood that we will experience credit losses. The risk of loss will vary with, among other things, general economic conditions, including the current economic environment and real estate market, the type of loan, the creditworthiness of the borrower over the term of the loan, and, in the case of a collateralized loan, the quality of the collateral for the loan.

Our loan customers may not repay their loans according to the terms of these loans, and the collateral securing the payment of these loans may be insufficient to assure repayment. As a result, we may experience significant loan losses, which could have a material adverse effect on our operating results. Our management makes various assumptions and judgments about the collectability of our loan portfolio, including the creditworthiness of our borrowers and the value of the real estate and other assets serving as collateral for the repayment of many of our loans. We maintain an allowance for loan losses in an attempt to cover any loan losses that may occur. In determining the size of the allowance, we rely on an analysis of our loan portfolio based on historical loss experience, volume and types of loans, trends in classification, volume and trends in delinquencies and non-accruals, national and local economic conditions, and other pertinent information.

If our assumptions are wrong, our current allowance may not be sufficient to cover future loan losses, and we may need to make adjustments to allow for different economic conditions or adverse developments in our loan portfolio. Material additions to our allowance in the form of provisions for loan losses would materially decrease our net income. We expect our allowance to continue to fluctuate; however, given current and future market conditions, our allowance may not be adequate to cover future loan losses.

## Table of Contents

In addition, federal and state regulators periodically review our allowance for loan losses and may require us to increase our provision for loan and lease losses or recognize further loan charge-offs, based on judgments different than those of our management. Any increase in our allowance for loan losses or loan charge-offs as required by these regulators could have a negative effect on our operating results and could materially adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

The valuation of our servicing rights is based on estimates and subject to fluctuation based on market conditions and other factors that are beyond our control.

The fair value of our servicing rights is estimated based upon projections of expected future cash flows generated by the loans we service, historical prepayment rates, future prepayment estimates, portfolio characteristics, interest rates based on interest rate yield curves, volatility, market demand for servicing rights and other factors. While this evaluation process uses historical and other objective information, the valuation of our servicing rights is ultimately an estimate based on our experience, judgment and expectations regarding our servicing portfolio and the broader market. This is an inherently uncertain process and the value of our servicing rights may be adversely impacted by factors that are beyond our control, which may in turn have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

The recognition of gains on the sale of loans reflects certain assumptions.

Gains on the sale of loans comprise a significant component of our revenue. Noncash gains recognized in the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 were \$6.2 million, \$7.1 million and \$6.1 million respectively. The determination of these noncash gains is based on assumptions regarding the value of unguaranteed loans retained, servicing rights retained and deferred fees and costs. The value of retained unguaranteed loans and servicing rights are determined by our wholly owned subsidiary, GLS, which applies market derived factors such as prepayment rates, current market conditions and recent loan sales to arrive at valuations. Deferred fees and costs are determined using internal analysis of the cost to originate loans. Significant errors in assumptions used to compute gains on sale of loans could result in material revenue misstatements, which may have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and profitability. In addition, while we believe that the valuations provided by GLS are at arm's length, reflect fair value and are subject to validation by an independent third party on a biannual basis, if such valuations are not reflective of fair market value then our business, results of operations and financial condition may be materially and adversely affected.

We anticipate that going forward we will experience increasing growth in our held-for-sale and held-for-investment loan portfolios due to our increasing construction portfolio or strategic business decisions.

Our revenue model has historically been driven by selling loans that we originate, or a portion of the loans, in the secondary market when fully funded. The growth of our construction portfolio that typically funds in stages will result in a decrease in the volume of loans sold relative to production in any period, which, in turn, decreases our revenue relative to production in any period. In addition, we anticipate growth in our loans held for investment due to our origination of loans that we choose not to sell or for which there is no secondary market or due to other strategic choices, including the pursuit of potential opportunities in conventional lending outside of SBA or other government guarantee programs. Growth in our held-for-sale and our held-for-investment loan portfolios exposes us to increased interest rate and credit risks.

Our rental equipment is subject to residual value risk upon disposition, and may not sell at the prices or in the quantities we expect.

The market value of any given piece of rental equipment could be less than its depreciated value at the time it is sold. The market value of used rental equipment depends on several factors, including:

- the market price for new equipment of a like kind;
- the age of the equipment at the time it is sold, as well as wear and tear on the equipment relative to its age;
- the supply of used equipment on the market;
- technological advances relating to the equipment;
- demand for the used equipment; and
- general economic conditions.



Table of Contents

We include in income from operations the difference between the sales price and the depreciated value of an item of equipment sold. Changes in our assumptions regarding depreciation could change our depreciation expense, as well as the gain or loss realized upon disposal of equipment. Sales of our used rental equipment at prices that fall significantly below our projections or in lesser quantities than we anticipate will have a negative impact on our results of operations and cash flows.

We are subject to liquidity risk in our operations.

Liquidity risk is the possibility of being unable, at a reasonable cost and within acceptable risk tolerances, to pay obligations as they come due, to capitalize on growth opportunities as they arise, or to pay regular dividends because of an inability to liquidate assets or obtain adequate funding on a timely basis. Liquidity is required to fund various obligations, including credit obligations to borrowers, loan originations, withdrawals by depositors, repayment of debt, dividends to shareholders, operating expenses, and capital expenditures. Our liquidity is derived primarily from the sale of loans in the secondary market, retail deposit growth and retention, principal and interest payments on loans and investment securities, net cash provided from operations, and access to other funding sources. Historically, we have relied on brokered and Internet funds as a large portion of our deposit base. Our access to funding sources in amounts adequate to finance our activities or at a reasonable cost could be impaired by factors that affect us specifically or the financial services industry in general. Factors that could adversely affect our access to liquidity sources include a decrease in the level of our business activity due to a market downturn, our lack of access to a traditional branch banking network designed to generate core deposits and adverse regulatory action against us. Our ability to borrow could also be impaired by factors that are not specific to us, such as a severe disruption in the financial markets or negative views and expectations about the prospects for the financial services industry as a whole. Our access to borrowed funds could become limited in the future, and we may be required to pay above market rates for additional borrowed funds, if we are able to obtain them at all, which may adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

The amount of other real estate owned, or OREO, may increase significantly, resulting in additional losses, and costs and expenses that will negatively affect our operations.

In connection with our banking business, we take title to real estate collateral from time to time through foreclosure or otherwise in connection with efforts to collect debts previously contracted. Such real estate is referred to as other real estate owned, or OREO. As the amount of OREO increases, our losses, and the costs and expenses to maintain the real estate, likewise increase. The amount of OREO we hold may increase due to various economic conditions or other factors. Any additional increase in losses and maintenance costs and other expenses due to OREO may have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition. Such effects may be particularly pronounced in a market of reduced real estate values and excess inventory, which may make the disposition of OREO properties more difficult, increase maintenance costs and other expenses, and reduce our ultimate realization from any OREO sales. In addition, at the time of acquisition of the OREO we are required to reflect its fair market value in our financial statements. If the OREO declines in value subsequent to its acquisition, we are required to recognize a loss. As a result, declines in the value of our OREO will have a negative effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition. As of December 31, 2017, we had four OREO properties with an aggregate carrying value of \$1.3 million. For more information about amounts held in OREO, see Note 11 to our audited consolidated financial statements as of and for the year ended December 31, 2017 filed with this Report.

We are subject to environmental liability risk associated with our lending activities.

A significant portion of our loan portfolio is secured by real property. During the ordinary course of business, we may foreclose on and take title to properties securing certain loans. In doing so, there is a risk that hazardous or toxic substances could be found on these properties. If hazardous or toxic substances are found, we may be liable for remediation costs, as well as for personal injury and property damage. Environmental laws may require us to incur substantial expenses and may materially reduce the affected property's value or limit our ability to use or sell the affected property. In addition, future laws or more stringent interpretations or enforcement policies with respect to existing laws may increase our exposure to environmental liability. The remediation costs and any other financial liabilities associated with an environmental hazard could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of

operations and financial condition.

18

---

Table of Contents

Our use of appraisals in deciding whether to make a loan secured by real property or how to value the loan in the future may not accurately reflect the net value of the collateral that we can realize.

In considering whether to make a loan secured by real property, we generally require an appraisal of the property. However, an appraisal is only an estimate of the value of the property at the time the appraisal is made, and, as real estate values may experience changes in value in relatively short periods of time, especially during periods of heightened economic uncertainty, this estimate might not accurately describe the net value of the real property collateral after the loan has been closed. If the appraisal does not reflect the amount that may be obtained upon any sale or foreclosure of the property, we may not realize an amount equal to the indebtedness secured by the property. In addition, we rely on appraisals and other valuation techniques to establish the value of our OREO and to determine certain loan impairments. If any of these valuations are inaccurate, our consolidated financial statements may not reflect the correct value of OREO, and our Allowance for loans losses may not reflect accurate loan impairments. The valuation of the properties securing the loans in our portfolio may negatively impact the continuing value of those loans and could materially adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

We could be subject to losses, regulatory action or reputational harm due to fraudulent and negligent acts on the part of loan applicants, our borrowers, our employees and vendors.

In deciding whether to extend credit or enter into other transactions with customers and counterparties, we may rely on information furnished by or on behalf of customers and counterparties, including financial statements, property appraisals, title information, employment and income documentation, account information and other financial information. We may also rely on representations of clients and counterparties as to the accuracy and completeness of such information and, with respect to financial statements, on reports of independent auditors. Any such misrepresentation or incorrect or incomplete information may not be detected prior to funding a loan or during our ongoing monitoring of outstanding loans. In addition, one or more of our employees or vendors could cause a significant operational breakdown or failure, either as a result of human error or where an individual purposefully sabotages or fraudulently manipulates our loan documentation, operations or systems. Any of these developments could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

We may fail to realize all of the anticipated benefits, including estimated cost savings, of potential future acquisitions. In the future, we may encounter difficulties in obtaining required regulatory approvals for, or face unexpected contingent liabilities from, businesses we may acquire. Integration of an acquired business can be complex and costly, sometimes including combining relevant accounting and data processing systems and management controls, as well as managing relevant relationships with employees, customers, suppliers and other business partners. Integration efforts could divert management attention and resources, which could adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition. Additionally, given continued market volatility and uncertainty, we may also experience increased credit costs or need to take additional markdowns and allowances for loan losses on assets and loans we may acquire. These increased credit costs, markdowns and allowances could materially adversely affect our financial condition and results of operations, as well as the value of our common stock.

Implementation of our growth strategy depends, in part, on our ability to successfully identify acquisition opportunities and strategic partners that will complement our operating philosophy, and also on the successful integration of their operations with our own. To successfully acquire target companies or establish complementary lines of business, we must be able to correctly identify profitable or growing markets, as well as attract the necessary relationships and high caliber personnel to make these new business lines profitable. In addition, we may not be able to identify suitable opportunities for further growth and expansion. As consolidation of the financial services industry continues, the competition for suitable acquisition candidates may increase. We will compete with other financial services companies for acquisition opportunities, and many of these competitors have greater financial resources than we do and may be able to pay more for an acquisition than we are able or willing to pay. If we are unable to effectively implement our growth strategies, our business, results of operations and financial condition may be materially and adversely affected.





Table of Contents

Acquisitions may be delayed, impeded, or prohibited due to regulatory issues.

Acquisitions by the Company or the Bank, particularly those of financial institutions, are subject to approval by a variety of federal and state regulatory agencies. Regulatory approvals could be delayed, impeded, restrictively conditioned or denied due to regulatory issues we have, or may have, with regulatory agencies, including, without limitation, issues related to the CRA; fair lending laws; fair housing laws; consumer protection laws; unfair, deceptive, or abusive acts or practices regulations; and other similar laws and regulations. We may fail to pursue, evaluate or complete strategic and competitively significant acquisition opportunities as a result of our inability, or perceived or anticipated inability, to obtain regulatory approvals in a timely manner, under reasonable conditions or at all.

Difficulties associated with potential acquisitions that may result from these factors could have a material adverse impact on our business, and, in turn, our financial condition and results of operations.

The value of our goodwill and other intangible assets may decline in the future.

In connection with our acquisitions, we have generally recognized intangible assets, including goodwill, in our consolidated balance sheet. We may not realize the value of these assets. Management performs an annual review of the carrying values of goodwill and indefinite-lived intangible assets and periodic reviews of the carrying values of all other intangible assets to determine whether events and circumstances indicate that an impairment in value may have occurred. A variety of factors could cause the carrying value of an asset to become impaired. Should a review indicate impairment, a write-down of the carrying value of the asset would occur, resulting in a non-cash charge which would adversely affect our results of operations for the period. All goodwill and intangibles recorded in 2017 are related to the acquisition of Reltco. During 2017, the Company recognized impairment on the entire balance of goodwill and a portion of other intangibles related to this acquisition. See Note 2. Title Insurance Business for further information on this transaction and related impairment.

New lines of business or new products and services may subject us to additional risks.

From time to time, we may develop, grow and/or acquire new lines of business or offer new products and services within existing lines of business. There are substantial risks and uncertainties associated with these efforts, particularly in instances where the markets are not fully developed. In developing and marketing new lines of business and/or new products and services, we may invest significant time and resources. Initial timetables for the introduction and development of new lines of business and/or new products or services may not be achieved and price and profitability targets may not prove feasible. External factors, such as compliance with regulations, competitive alternatives and shifting market preferences, may also impact the successful implementation of a new line of business or a new product or service. Furthermore, any new line of business and/or new product or service could have a significant impact on the effectiveness of our system of internal controls. Failure to successfully manage these risks in the development and implementation of new lines of business or new products or services could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition. All service offerings, including current offerings and those which may be provided in the future, may become more risky due to changes in economic, competitive and market conditions beyond our control.

Changes in the interest rate environment could reduce our net interest income, which could reduce our profitability.

As a financial institution, our earnings depend in part on our net interest income, which is the difference between the interest income that we earn on interest-earning assets, such as investment securities and loans, and the interest expense that we pay on interest-bearing liabilities, such as deposits and borrowings. Additionally, changes in interest rates affect the premiums we may receive in connection with the sale of SBA 7(a) loans in the secondary market, pre-payment speeds of loans for which we own servicing rights, our ability to fund our operations with customer deposits, and the fair value of securities in our investment portfolio. Therefore, any change in general market interest rates, including changes in federal fiscal and monetary policies, affects us more than non-financial companies and can have a significant effect on our net interest income and results of operations. Our assets and liabilities may react differently to changes in overall market rates or conditions because there may be mismatches between the repricing or maturity characteristics of the assets and liabilities. As a result, an increase or decrease in market interest rates could have material adverse effects on our net interest margin, noninterest income and results of operations. Further, since we began originating loans in May 2007 we have operated in a period of low market interest rates. Interest rates began

increasing in 2017 and and may continue to increase in 2018 and future periods. In a rising interest rate environment, potential borrowers could seek to defer loans as they wait for interest rates to settle, and borrowers of variable rate loans may be subject to increased interest rates, which could result in a greater rate of prepayment or default. Rising interest rates may also present additional challenges to our business that we have not anticipated.

Table of Contents

We face strong competition from a diverse group of competitors.

The banking business is highly competitive, and we experience strong competition from many other financial institutions, including some of the largest commercial banks headquartered in the country, as well as other federally and state chartered financial institutions such as community banks and credit unions, finance and business development companies, consumer finance companies, peer-to-peer and marketplace lenders, securities brokerage firms, insurance companies, money market and mutual funds and other non-bank lenders.

We compete with these institutions both in attracting deposits and in making loans, primarily on the basis of the interest rates we pay and yield on these products. We also compete with these institutions in our other business lines, including equipment leasing and title insurance. Many of our competitors are well-established, much larger financial institutions. While we believe we can successfully compete with these other lenders in our industry verticals, we may face a competitive disadvantage as a result of our smaller size. Furthermore, nothing would prevent our competitors from developing or licensing a technology-based platform similar to the technology-based platform we currently use in our business. In addition, many of our non-bank competitors have fewer regulatory constraints and may have lower cost structures. We expect competition to continue to intensify due to financial institution consolidation, legislative, regulatory and technological changes, and the emergence of alternative banking sources.

Our ability to compete successfully will depend on a number of factors, including, among other things:

- our ability to build and maintain long-term customer relationships while ensuring high ethical standards and safe and sound banking practices;

- the scope, relevance and pricing of products and services that we offer;

- customer satisfaction with our products and services;

- industry and general economic trends; and

- our ability to keep pace with technological advances and to invest in new technology.

Increased competition could require us to increase the rates we pay on deposits or lower the rates we offer on loans, which could reduce our profitability. Our failure to compete effectively in our primary markets could cause us to lose market share and could have a material adverse effect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Our investments and/or financings in certain tax-advantaged projects may not generate returns as anticipated and may have an adverse impact on our financial results.

We invest in and/or finance certain tax-advantaged projects promoting renewable energy sources. Our investments in these projects are designed to generate a return primarily through the realization of federal and state income tax credits, and other tax benefits, over specified time periods. We utilize an investment tax credit for the installation of certain solar power facilities. We are subject to the risk that previously recorded tax credits, which remain subject to recapture by taxing authorities based on compliance features required to be met at the project level, will fail to meet certain government compliance requirements and will not be able to be fully realized. The possible inability to realize these tax credits and other tax benefits can have a negative impact on our financial results. The risk of not being able to realize the tax credits and other tax benefits depends on many factors outside of our control, including changes in the applicable provisions of the tax code and the ability of the projects to be completed and properly managed. In addition, we make loans through the United States Department of Agriculture's Rural Energy for America Program, which provides guaranteed loan financing and grant funding to agricultural producers and rural small businesses for renewable energy systems or to make energy-efficient improvements. Any changes to applicable provisions of the tax code or other developments could adversely impact demand for these loans even where we are not utilizing an investment tax credit.

Our loan portfolio may be affected by deterioration in real estate markets, including declines in the performance of loans.

Deterioration in real estate markets could result in declining prices and excess inventories. As a result, developers may experience financial deterioration and banking institutions may experience declines in the performance of construction, development and commercial loans. We make credit and reserve decisions based on the current conditions of borrowers or projects combined with our expectations for the future. If conditions are worse than forecast, we could experience higher charge-offs and delinquencies than is provided in the allowance for loan losses,

which could materially adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

21

---

Table of Contents

A prolonged U.S. government shutdown or default by the U.S. on government obligations would harm our results of operations.

Our results of operations, including revenue, non-interest income, expenses and net interest income, would be adversely affected in the event of widespread financial and business disruption on account of a default by the United States on U.S. government obligations or a prolonged failure to maintain significant U.S. government operations, particularly those pertaining to the SBA or the FDIC. Any such failure to maintain such U.S. government operations would impede our ability to originate SBA loans and our ability to sell such loans in the secondary market, which would materially adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Deterioration in the fiscal position of the U.S. federal government and downgrades in U.S. Treasury and federal agency securities could adversely affect us and our subsidiary's banking operations.

The long-term outlook for the fiscal position of the U.S. federal government is uncertain, as illustrated by the 2011 downgrade by certain rating agencies of the credit rating of the U.S. government and federal agencies. In addition to causing economic and financial market disruptions, any future downgrade, failure to raise the U.S. statutory debt limit, or deterioration in the fiscal outlook of the U.S. federal government, could, among other things, materially adversely affect the market value of the U.S. government and federal agency securities that we hold, the availability of those securities as collateral for borrowing, and our ability to access capital markets on favorable terms. In particular, it could increase interest rates and disrupt payment systems, money markets, and long-term or short-term fixed income markets, adversely affecting the cost and availability of funding, which could negatively affect our profitability. Also, the adverse consequences could extend to those to whom we extend credit and could adversely affect their ability to repay their loans. Any of these developments could materially adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Deterioration in the commercial soundness of our counterparties could adversely affect us.

Our ability to engage in routine funding transactions could be adversely affected by the actions and commercial soundness of other financial institutions. Financial services institutions are interrelated as a result of trading, clearing, counterparty or other relationships, and we routinely execute transactions with counterparties in the financial industry. As a result, defaults by, or even rumors or questions about, one or more financial services institutions, or the financial services industry generally, could create another market-wide liquidity crisis similar to that experienced in late 2008 and early 2009 and could lead to losses or defaults by us or by other institutions. The deterioration or failure of our counterparties would have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

We have different lending risks than larger, more diversified banks.

Our ability to diversify our economic risks is limited. We lend primarily to small businesses in selected industries, which may expose us to greater lending risks than those of banks lending to larger, better-capitalized businesses with longer operating histories. Small businesses generally have fewer financial resources in terms of capital or borrowing capacity than larger entities and may have limited operating histories. If economic conditions negatively impact the verticals in which we operate, our business, results of operations and financial condition may be adversely affected. We attempt to manage our credit exposure through careful monitoring of loan applicants and through loan approval and review procedures. We have established an evaluation process designed to determine the adequacy of our allowance for loan losses. While this evaluation process uses historical and other objective information, the classification of loans and the establishment of loan losses is an estimate based on experience, judgment and expectations regarding our borrowers, and the economies in which we and our borrowers operate, as well as the judgment of our regulators. This is an inherently uncertain process, and our loan loss reserves may not be sufficient to absorb future loan losses or prevent a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Table of Contents

We rely heavily on our management team, and the unexpected loss of any of those personnel could adversely affect our operations; we depend on our ability to attract and retain key personnel.

We are a customer-focused and relationship-driven organization. We expect our future growth to be driven in a large part by the relationships maintained with our customers by our chief executive officer, president, and other senior officers. The unexpected loss of any of our key employees could have an adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition. The implementation of our business strategy will also require us to continue to attract, hire, motivate and retain skilled personnel to develop new customer relationships as well as new financial products and services. We are not party to non-compete or non-solicitation agreements with any of our officers or employees. The market for qualified employees in the businesses in which we operate is competitive, and we may not be successful in attracting, hiring or retaining key personnel. Our inability to attract, hire or retain key personnel could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Our risk management framework may not be effective in mitigating risks and/or losses to us.

We have implemented a risk management framework to manage our risk exposure. This framework is comprised of various processes, systems and strategies, and is designed to manage the types of risk to which we are subject, including, among others, credit, market, liquidity, interest rate and compliance risks. Our framework also includes financial and other modeling methodologies which involve management assumptions and judgment. Our risk management framework may not be effective under all circumstances and it may fail to adequately mitigate risk or loss to us. If our framework is not effective, we could suffer unexpected losses and be subject to potentially adverse regulatory consequences, and our business, results of operations and financial condition could be materially and adversely affected.

Hurricanes or other adverse weather events could disrupt our operations, which could have an adverse effect on our business or results of operations.

North Carolina's coastal region is affected, from time to time, by adverse weather events, particularly hurricanes. We cannot predict whether, or to what extent, damage caused by future hurricanes or other weather events will affect our operations. Weather events could cause a disruption in our day-to-day business activities and could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Outbreaks of avian disease, such as avian influenza, or the perception that outbreaks may occur, could have a material adverse effect on lending operations in our Agriculture vertical.

Pandemic events beyond our control, such as an outbreak of avian disease, or "bird flu," could have a material adverse effect on the performance of our portfolio of loans in our Agriculture vertical and on the demand for new loans in this vertical. An outbreak of disease could result in governmental restrictions on the import and export of fresh and frozen chicken or other poultry products to or from our customers. This could result in the cancellation of orders and the curtailment of farming operations by our customers and could create adverse publicity that may have a material adverse effect on the performance of our existing loans and future business prospects in our Agriculture vertical. In addition, consumer fears about avian disease have, in the past, depressed demand for fresh poultry, which may adversely impact the demand for future loans and the performance of existing loans in our Agriculture vertical.

If we fail to maintain an effective system of internal control over financial reporting, we may not be able to accurately report our financial results. As a result, current and potential shareholders could lose confidence in our financial reporting which would harm our business and the trading price of our securities.

If we identify material weaknesses in our internal control over financial reporting or are otherwise required to restate our financial statements, we could be required to implement expensive and time-consuming remedial measures and could lose investor confidence in the accuracy and completeness of our financial reports. We may also face regulatory enforcement or other actions, including the potential delisting of our securities from NASDAQ. This could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations, and could subject us to litigation.

Table of Contents

Changes in accounting standards and management's selection of accounting methods, including assumptions and estimates, could materially impact our financial statements.

From time to time the SEC and the Financial Accounting Standards Board, or FASB, update accounting principles generally accepted in the United States ("GAAP") that govern the preparation of our financial statements. These changes can be hard to predict and can materially impact how we record and report our financial condition and results of operations. In some cases, we could be required to apply a new or revised standard retroactively, resulting in changes to previously reported financial results, or a cumulative charge to retained earnings. In addition, management is required to use certain assumptions and estimates in preparing our financial statements, including determining the fair value of certain assets and liabilities, among other items. If the assumptions or estimates are incorrect, we may experience unexpected material adverse consequences that could negatively affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

The FASB has recently issued an accounting standard update that will result in a significant change in how we recognize credit losses and may have a material impact on our financial condition or results of operations. In June 2016, the FASB issued an accounting standard update, "Financial Instruments-Credit Losses (Topic 326), Measurement of Credit Losses on Financial Instruments," which replaces the current "incurred loss" model for recognizing credit losses with an "expected loss" model referred to as the Current Expected Credit Loss ("CECL") model. Under the CECL model, we will be required to present certain financial assets carried at amortized cost, such as loans held for investment and held-to-maturity debt securities, at the net amount expected to be collected over the contractual life of the financial instrument. The measurement of expected credit losses is to be based on information about past events, including historical experience, current conditions, and reasonable and supportable forecasts that affect the collectability of the reported amount. This measurement will take place at the time the financial asset is first added to the balance sheet and periodically thereafter. This differs significantly from the "incurred loss" model required under current GAAP, which delays recognition until it is probable a loss has been incurred. Accordingly, we expect that the adoption of the CECL model will materially affect how we determine our allowance for loan losses and could require us to significantly increase our allowance. Moreover, the CECL model may create more volatility in the level of our allowance for loan losses. If we are required to materially increase our level of allowance for loan losses for any reason, such increase could adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.

The new CECL standard will become effective for us on January 1, 2020. We are currently evaluating the impact the CECL model will have on our accounting, but we expect to recognize a one-time cumulative-effect adjustment to our allowance for loan losses as of the beginning of the first reporting period in which the new standard is effective, consistent with regulatory expectations set forth in interagency guidance issued at the end of 2016. We cannot yet determine the magnitude of any such one-time cumulative adjustment or of the overall impact of the new standard on our financial condition or results of operations.

Our business reputation is important and any damage to it could have a material adverse effect on our business. Our reputation is very important to sustain our business, as we rely on our relationships with our current, former and potential customers and shareholders, and the industries that we serve. Any damage to our reputation, whether arising from legal, regulatory, supervisory or enforcement actions, matters affecting our financial reporting or compliance with SEC and exchange listing requirements, negative publicity, the conduct of our business or otherwise could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Insiders have substantial control over us, and this control may limit our shareholders' ability to influence corporate matters and may delay or prevent a third party from acquiring control over us.

As of January 31, 2018, our directors and executive officers and their related entities currently beneficially own, in the aggregate, approximately 25.7% of our outstanding common stock. The significant concentration of stock ownership may adversely affect the trading price of our common stock due to investors' perception that conflicts of interest may exist or arise. In addition, these shareholders will be able to exercise influence over all matters requiring shareholder approval, including the election of directors and approval of corporate transactions, such as a merger or other sale of our company or its assets. This concentration of ownership could limit your ability to influence corporate matters and may have the effect of delaying or preventing a change in control, including a merger, consolidation or other business

combination involving us, or discouraging a potential acquirer from making a tender offer or otherwise attempting to obtain control, even if that change in control would benefit our other shareholders. For information regarding the ownership of our outstanding stock by our executive officers and directors and related entities, see “Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Shareholder Matters” in this Report.



Table of Contents

Risks Related to Our Investment in Apiture

If the market for Apiture's digital banking solutions develops more slowly than we expect or changes in ways that we fail to anticipate, our operating results would be adversely affected.

Use of and reliance on digital banking solutions is at an early stage, and we do not know whether the market will develop more slowly than we anticipate. Many financial institutions have invested substantial resources in legacy software, and these institutions may be reluctant or unwilling to convert from their existing systems to Apiture's digital banking solutions. Furthermore, for most financial institutions, transitioning from an existing software provider (or from an internally developed legacy system) to a new provider is a significant and expensive undertaking. Potential customers of Apiture's digital banking solutions may conclude that switching providers involves too many potential disadvantages such as disruption of business operations, loss of accustomed functionality and increased costs (including conversion and transition costs). Furthermore, some financial institutions may be reluctant or unwilling to use a cloud-based solution over concerns such as the security of their data and reliability of the delivery model. These concerns or other considerations may cause potential customers to choose not to adopt cloud-based solutions such as those being developed by Apiture or to adopt alternative solutions, either of which could have a material adverse impact on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Apiture's future success will depend on its ability to develop, sell and deliver new or enhanced solutions to financial institution clients; however, these solutions and related services may not be attractive to existing or prospective clients. In addition, promoting, selling and delivering these new and enhanced solutions may require increasingly costly sales, marketing and implementation efforts, and if existing or prospective clients choose not to adopt these solutions, our business, results of operations and financial condition could be materially and adversely affected.

Apiture may experience development delays or software defects, which could adversely impact its potential profitability and our results of operations.

Apiture's digital banking solution will require sophisticated software and computing systems that may encounter development delays or software defects. Defects in Apiture's software offerings or delays in the development of such software could result in unforeseen costs, diversion of technical and other resources, loss of credibility with existing and potential clients or reputational harm, any of which could materially adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition. Furthermore, to the extent that the Bank is involved in beta testing or early adoption of Apiture's digital banking solutions, the Bank's personnel and resources may be diverted from the day-to-day operation of the Bank and the Bank's operations may be adversely impacted.

Apiture's ability to anticipate and respond to changing industry trends and the needs and preferences of financial institution clients may affect its competitiveness or demand for its digital banking solutions, which may adversely affect our operating results.

The financial services, payments, and technology industries are subject to rapid technological advancements, new products and services, an evolving competitive landscape, developing industry standards and changing client and consumer needs and preferences. We expect that new services and technologies applicable to the financial services, payments and technology industries will continue to emerge and evolve. These changes in technology may limit the competitiveness of and demand for products or services offered by Apiture. Also, Apiture's existing and prospective financial institution clients and their respective customers continue to adopt new technology for business and personal uses. Apiture must anticipate and respond to these changes in order to compete in its market.

Apiture's failure to develop products and services that meet the needs and preferences of its clients could have an adverse effect on its ability to compete effectively. Furthermore, potential negative reaction to Apiture's products and services can spread quickly through social media and damage its reputation before it has the opportunity to respond. If Apiture is unable to anticipate or respond to technological changes or evolving industry demands on a timely basis, our business, results of operations and financial condition could be materially adversely affected.

Table of Contents

If Apiture is unable to effectively integrate its digital banking solutions with other systems used by financial institutions, its solutions will not operate effectively and our results of operations could be adversely affected. The functionality of Apiture's digital banking solutions will depend on its ability to integrate with other third-party systems used by potential clients, including well-established core processing systems. Certain providers of these third-party systems also offer solutions that are competitive to the solutions being developed by Apiture and may have an advantage with clients already using their software by having better ability to integrate with their software and by being able to bundle their competitive products with other applications used by Apiture's existing and prospective financial institution clients at favorable pricing.

Security breaches or attacks on Apiture's systems may have a significant effect on our business.

In order to offer its products and services, Apiture must process, store, and transmit sensitive business information and personal consumer information, including, but not limited to, names, bankcard numbers, home or business addresses, social security numbers, driver's license numbers and bank account numbers. Under various federal, state and international laws, Apiture is responsible for information provided to it by financial institutions, merchants, third-party service providers, and others. Maintaining the confidentiality of such sensitive business information and personal consumer information will be critical to Apiture's business; however, Apiture cannot be certain that the security measures and procedures it puts in place to protect this sensitive data will be successful or sufficient to counter all current and emerging technology threats designed to breach network security in order to gain access to confidential information. The increasing sophistication of cyber criminals and their continuous attempts to breach networks presents risk of a security breach of Apiture's systems. A breach of Apiture's systems processing or storing sensitive business information or personal consumer information could lead to claims against it, reputational damage, lost clients and lost revenue, substantial additional costs (including costs of notification of consumers, credit monitoring, card reissuance, contact centers and forensics), loss of clients' and their customers' confidence, as well as imposition of fines and damages, all of which could materially adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition. In addition, as security threats continue to evolve, Apiture will be required to invest additional resources to modify and update the security of its systems. The level of required investment could materially adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Apiture may experience breakdowns in its processing systems that could damage client relations and expose it to liability.

Apiture's business will rely heavily on the reliability of its processing systems. A system outage could have a material adverse effect on Apiture's business, financial condition, and results of operations. Not only would it suffer damage to its reputation in the event of a system outage, but Apiture may also be liable to third parties. To successfully operate its business, Apiture must be able to protect its processing and other systems from interruption, including from events that may be beyond its reasonable control. Events that could cause system interruptions include, but are not limited to, fire, natural disaster, unauthorized entry, power loss, telecommunications failure, computer viruses, terrorist acts, cyber attacks and war. To the extent Apiture outsources its disaster recovery functions, it is at risk of the vendor's unresponsiveness or other failures in the event of system breakdowns.

## Table of Contents

### Risks Related to Our Regulatory Environment

We are subject to extensive regulation that could limit or restrict our activities.

We operate in a highly regulated industry and are subject to examination, supervision, and comprehensive regulation by various federal and state regulatory agencies. Our compliance with these regulations is costly and restricts certain of our activities, including the declaration and payment of cash dividends to shareholders, mergers and acquisitions, investments, loans and interest rates charged, interest rates paid on deposits, and locations of offices. We are also subject to capitalization guidelines established by our regulators, which require us to maintain adequate capital to support our growth and operations. Should we fail to comply with these regulatory requirements, federal and state regulators could impose additional restrictions on the activities of the Company and the Bank, which could materially and adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

The laws and regulations applicable to the banking industry have changed in recent years and may continue to change, and we cannot predict the effects of these changes on our business and profitability. Because government regulation greatly affects the business and financial results of all commercial banks and bank holding companies, our cost of compliance could adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

The Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, or the Dodd-Frank Act, was enacted on July 21, 2010. The provisions of the Dodd-Frank Act, and its implementing regulations may materially and adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition. Some or all of the changes, including the rulemaking authority granted to the Consumer Financial Protection Bureau, or the CFPB, may result in greater liability, reporting requirements, assessment fees, operational restrictions, capital requirements, and other regulatory burdens applicable to us while many of our non-bank competitors may remain free from such burdens. The changes arising out of the Dodd-Frank Act could adversely affect our ability to attract and maintain depositors, to offer competitive products and services, to attract and retain key personnel and to expand our business.

Congress may consider additional proposals to change substantially the financial institution regulatory system and to expand or contract the powers of banking institutions and bank holding companies. Such legislation may change existing banking statutes and regulations, as well as our current operating environment significantly. If enacted, such legislation could increase or decrease the cost of doing business, limit or expand our permissible activities, or affect the competitive balance among banks, savings associations, credit unions, other financial institutions and non-bank lenders. We cannot predict whether new legislation will be enacted and, if enacted, the effect that it, or any regulations, would have on our business, results of operations or financial condition.

Our financial condition and results of operations are affected by credit policies of monetary authorities, particularly the Federal Reserve. Actions by monetary and fiscal authorities, including the Federal Reserve, could have an adverse effect on our deposit levels, loan demand, or business and earnings, as well as the value of our common stock.

On February 3, 2017, the President of the United States issued an executive order identifying “core principles” for the administration’s financial services regulatory policy and directing the Secretary of the Treasury, in consultation with the heads of other financial regulatory agencies, to evaluate how the current regulatory framework promotes or inhibits the principles and what actions have been, and are being, taken to promote the principles. In response to the executive order, on June 12, 2017, October 6, 2017 and October 26, 2017, respectively, the U.S. Department of the Treasury issued the first three of four reports recommending a number of comprehensive changes in the current regulatory system for U.S. depository institutions, the U.S. capital markets and the U.S. asset management and insurance industries. It is not clear whether the executive order will result in material changes to the current laws and rules, or those that are in process, applicable to financial institutions and financial services or products like ours. It also is not clear what the impact from any such changes would be on our business or the markets and industries in which we compete. There is no guarantee that any changes from this review would be positive for us, and any such changes could have a material adverse impact on our business and our prospects.

We may be required to raise additional capital in the future, including to comply with increased minimum capital thresholds established by our regulators as part of their implementation of Basel III, but that capital may not be available when it is needed and could be dilutive to our existing shareholders, which could adversely affect our financial condition and results of operations.

In July 2013, the Federal Reserve, FDIC and Office of the Comptroller of the Currency approved final rules that establish an integrated regulatory capital framework that addresses perceived shortcomings in certain capital requirements. The rules implement in the United States the Basel III regulatory capital reforms from the Basel Committee on Banking Supervision and certain changes required by the Dodd-Frank Act.

## Table of Contents

The major provisions of the rule applicable to the Company are:

The rule implements higher minimum capital requirements, includes a new common equity Tier 1 capital requirement, and establishes criteria that instruments must meet in order to be considered Common Equity Tier 1 capital, additional Tier 1 capital, or Tier 2 capital. These enhancements are intended to both improve the quality and increase the quantity of capital required to be held by banking organizations. The minimum capital to risk-weighted assets (“RWA”) requirements under the rule are a common equity Tier 1 capital ratio of 4.5% and a Tier 1 capital ratio of 6.0%, which is an increase from 4.0%, and a total capital ratio that remains at 8.0%. The minimum leverage ratio (Tier 1 capital to total assets) is 4.0%. The rule maintains the general structure of the current prompt corrective action, or PCA, framework while incorporating these increased minimum requirements.

The rule implements changes to the definition of capital. Among the most important changes are stricter eligibility criteria for regulatory capital instruments that would disallow the inclusion of instruments such as trust preferred securities in Tier 1 capital going forward, and new constraints on the inclusion of minority interests, mortgage-servicing assets (“MSAs”), deferred tax assets (“DTAs”), and certain investments in the capital of unconsolidated financial institutions. In addition, the rule requires that certain regulatory capital deductions be made from common equity Tier 1 capital.

Under the rule, in order to avoid limitations on capital distributions, including dividend payments and certain discretionary bonus payments to executive officers, a banking organization must hold a capital conservation buffer composed of common equity Tier 1 capital above its minimum risk-based capital requirements. The buffer is measured relative to RWA. A three-year phase-in of the capital conservation buffer requirements began on January 1, 2016. A banking organization with a buffer greater than 2.5% would not be subject to limits on capital distributions or discretionary bonus payments; however, a banking organization with a buffer of less than 2.5% would be subject to increasingly stringent limitations as the buffer approaches zero. The rule also prohibits a banking organization from making distributions or discretionary bonus payments during any quarter if its eligible retained income is negative in that quarter and its capital conservation buffer ratio was less than 2.5% at the beginning of the quarter. When the rule is fully phased in, the minimum capital requirements plus the capital conservation buffer will exceed the PCA well-capitalized thresholds.

The rule also increases the risk weights for past-due loans, certain commercial real estate loans, and some equity exposures, and makes selected other changes in risk weights and credit conversion factors.

Compliance by LOB and the Bank with these capital requirements affects their respective operations by increasing the amount of capital required to conduct operations. In order to support the operations at the Bank, we may need to raise capital in the future. Our ability to raise capital will depend in part on conditions in the capital markets at that time, which are outside our control. Accordingly, we may be unable to raise capital on terms acceptable to us if at all. If we cannot raise capital when needed, our ability to operate or further expand our operations could be materially impaired. In addition, if we decide to raise equity capital under such conditions, the interests of our shareholders could be diluted.

Our deposit operations are subject to extensive regulation, and we expect additional regulatory requirements to be implemented in the future.

We are subject to significant anti-money laundering, “know your customer” and other regulations under applicable law, including the Bank Secrecy Act and the USA PATRIOT Act, and we could become subject in the future to additional regulatory requirements beyond those that are currently adopted, proposed or contemplated. We expect that federal and state bank regulators will increase their oversight, inspection and investigatory role over our deposit operations and the financial services industry generally. Furthermore, we intend to increase our deposit product offerings and grow our customer deposit portfolio in the future and, as a result, we are, and will continue to be, subject to heightened compliance and operating costs that could adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition. In addition, legal and regulatory proceedings and other contingencies will arise from time to time that may have an adverse effect on our business practices and results of operations.



## Table of Contents

The FDIC Deposit Insurance assessments that we are required to pay may continue to materially increase in the future, which would have an adverse effect on our earnings.

As a member institution of the FDIC, we are assessed a quarterly deposit insurance premium. Failed banks nationwide have significantly depleted the insurance fund and reduced the ratio of reserves to insured deposits. As a result, we may be required to pay significantly higher premiums or additional special assessments that could adversely affect our business, results of operations and financial condition.

On October 19, 2010, the FDIC adopted a Deposit Insurance Fund, or DIF, Restoration Plan, which requires the DIF to attain a 1.35% reserve ratio by September 30, 2020. The Dodd-Frank Act directs the FDIC to “offset the effect” of the increased reserve ratio for insured depository institutions with total consolidated assets of less than \$10 billion. In addition, the FDIC modified the method by which assessments are determined and, effective April 1, 2011, adjusted assessment rates, which will range from 2.5 to 45 basis points (annualized), subject to adjustments for unsecured debt and, in the case of small institutions outside the lowest risk category and certain large and highly complex institutions, brokered deposits. Further increased FDIC assessment premiums, due to our risk classification, emergency assessments, or implementation of the modified DIF reserve ratio, could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

The effects of the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act on our business have not yet been fully analyzed and could have a significant impact on our net income.

On December 22, 2017, the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (“Tax Reform Act”) was signed into law. We are in the process of analyzing the Tax Reform Act and its possible effects on the Company and the Bank. The Tax Reform Act reduces the corporate tax rate to 21% from 35%, among other things. As a result of this Tax Reform Act, we have revalued our net deferred tax liability and recorded a provisional \$18.9 million income tax benefit as of December 31, 2017. The Company will continue to evaluate the application of this Tax Reform Act and the related interpretations and guidance on our financial position, which could result in additional income tax expense or benefit during 2018.

### Risks Related to our Common Stock

The low trading volume in our common stock may adversely affect your ability to resell shares at prices that you find attractive or at all.

Our common stock is listed for quotation on the Nasdaq Global Select Market under the ticker symbol “LOB”. The average daily trading volume for our common stock is less than that of larger financial institutions. Due to its relatively low trading volume, sales of our common stock may place significant downward pressure on the market price of our common stock. Furthermore, it may be difficult for holders to resell their shares at prices they find attractive, or at all.

We are an “emerging growth company,” and the reduced reporting requirements applicable to emerging growth companies may make our common stock less attractive to investors.

We are an “emerging growth company,” as defined in the federal securities laws. For as long as we continue to be an emerging growth company, we may take advantage of exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not emerging growth companies, including reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements and exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation and shareholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved. We could be an emerging growth company for up to five years, although we could lose that status sooner if our gross revenues exceed \$1.0 billion, if we issue more than \$1.0 billion in non-convertible debt in a three-year period, or if the market value of our common stock held by non-affiliates exceeds \$700 million as of any June 30 before that time, in which case we would no longer be an emerging growth company as of the following December 31. We cannot predict if investors will find our common stock less attractive because we may rely on these exemptions, or if we choose to rely on additional exemptions in the future. If some investors find our common stock less attractive as a result, there may be a less active trading market for our common stock and our stock price may be more volatile.





## Table of Contents

Securities analysts may not initiate or continue coverage on our common stock.

The trading market for our common stock depends in part on the research and reports that securities analysts publish about us and our business. We do not have any control over these securities analysts, and they may not cover our common stock. If securities analysts do not cover our common stock, the lack of research coverage may adversely affect its market price. If we are covered by securities analysts, and our common stock is the subject of an unfavorable report, the price of our common stock may decline. If one or more of these analysts cease to cover us or fail to publish regular reports on us, we could lose visibility in the financial markets, which could cause the price or trading volume of our common stock to decline.

We are incurring increased costs and obligations as a result of being a public company.

As a relatively new public company, we are required to comply with certain additional corporate governance and financial reporting practices and policies required of a publicly traded company. As a result, we have and will continue to incur significant legal, accounting and other expenses that we were not required to incur as a privately held company, due to compliance requirements of the Exchange Act, Sarbanes-Oxley, the Dodd-Frank Act, the listing requirements of Nasdaq, and other applicable securities rules and regulations. The Exchange Act requires, among other things, that we file annual, quarterly, and current reports with respect to our business and operating results with the SEC. We are also required to ensure that we have the ability to prepare financial statements that are fully compliant with all SEC reporting requirements on a timely basis. Compliance with these rules and regulations will increase our legal and financial compliance costs, and might make some activities more difficult, time-consuming or costly and increase demand on our systems and resources.

Future sales of shares of our common stock by existing shareholders could depress the market price of our common stock.

LOB had 39,903,186 shares of common stock outstanding at January 31, 2018. In addition, as of January 31, 2018, there were outstanding options to purchase 3,047,017 shares of our common stock that, if exercised, will result in these additional shares becoming available for sale. Also, as of January 31, 2018, there were 178,768 outstanding restricted stock units that vest over time and 2,532,808 outstanding restricted stock units that vest based on revenue and stock price performance criteria, that when vested will result in additional shares becoming available for sale. A large portion of these shares, options and restricted stock units are held by a small number of persons. Sales by these shareholders or option and restricted stock unit holders of a substantial number of shares could significantly reduce the market price of our common stock.

Our ability to pay cash dividends on our securities is limited and we may be unable to pay future dividends.

We may not declare or pay dividends on our securities, including our common stock, in the future. Any future determination relating to dividend policy will be made at the discretion of our board of directors and will depend on a number of factors, including our future earnings, capital requirements, financial condition, future prospects, regulatory restrictions, and other factors that our board of directors may deem relevant. The holders of our capital stock are entitled to receive dividends when, and if, declared by our board of directors out of funds legally available for that purpose. As part of our consideration to pay cash dividends, we intend to retain adequate funds from future earnings to support the development and growth of our business. In addition, our ability to pay dividends is restricted by federal policies and regulations. It is the current policy of the Federal Reserve that bank holding companies should pay cash dividends on capital stock only out of net income available over the past year and only if prospective earnings retention is consistent with the organization's expected future needs and financial condition. Further, our principal source of funds to pay dividends is cash dividends that we receive from the Bank, which, in turn, will be highly dependent upon the Bank's historical and projected results of operations, liquidity, cash flows and financial condition, as well as various legal and regulatory prohibitions and other restrictions on the ability of the Bank to pay dividends, extend credit or otherwise transfer funds to LOB.

Additional issuances of common stock or securities convertible into common stock may dilute holders of our common stock.

LOB may, in the future, determine that it is advisable, or LOB may encounter circumstances where it is determined that it is necessary, to issue additional shares of common stock, securities convertible into, exchangeable for or that

represent an interest in common stock, or common stock-equivalent securities to fund strategic initiatives or other business needs or to build additional capital. Our board of directors is authorized to cause us to issue additional shares of common stock from time to time for adequate consideration without any additional action on the part of our shareholders. The market price of our common stock could decline as a result of other offerings, as well as other sales of a large block of common stock or the perception that such sales could occur.

30

---

Table of Contents

LOB is subject to extensive regulation, and ownership of its common stock may have regulatory implications for holders thereof.

LOB is subject to extensive federal and state banking laws, including the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956, as amended, or BHCA, and federal and state banking regulations, that will impact the rights and obligations of owners of its common stock, including, for example, its ability to declare and pay dividends on its common stock. Shares of LOB's common stock are voting securities for purposes of the BHCA and any bank holding company or foreign bank that is subject to the BHCA may need approval to acquire or retain more than 5% of the then outstanding shares of LOB's common stock, and any holder (or group of holders deemed to be acting in concert) may need regulatory approval to acquire or retain 10% or more of the shares of LOB's common stock. A holder or group of holders may also be deemed to control LOB if they own 25% or more of our total equity. Under certain limited circumstances, a holder or group of holders acting in concert may exceed the 25% percent threshold and not be deemed to control us until they own 33% percent or more of our total equity. The amount of total equity owned by a holder or group of holders acting in concert is calculated by aggregating all shares held by the holder or group, whether as a combination of voting or non-voting shares or through other positions treated as equity for regulatory or accounting purposes and meeting certain other conditions. Holders of LOB common stock should consult their own counsel with regard to regulatory implications.

Holders should not expect us to redeem or repurchase outstanding shares of LOB common stock.

LOB's common stock is a perpetual equity security. This means that it has no maturity or mandatory redemption date and will not be redeemable at the option of the holders. Any decision LOB may make at any time to propose the repurchase or redemption of shares of its common stock will depend upon, among other things, our evaluation of the Company's capital position, the composition of our shareholders' equity, general market conditions at that time and other factors we deem relevant. LOB's ability to redeem shares of its common stock is subject to regulatory restrictions and limitations, including those of the Federal Reserve Board.

Offerings of debt, which would rank senior to LOB's common stock upon liquidation, may adversely affect the market price of LOB common stock.

The Company may attempt to increase its capital resources or, if regulatory capital ratios fall below the required minimums, The Company could be forced to raise additional capital by making additional offerings of debt or equity securities, senior or subordinated notes, preferred stock and common stock. Upon liquidation, holders of the Company's debt securities and lenders with respect to other borrowings will receive distributions of available assets prior to the holders of LOB common stock.

Anti-takeover provisions could adversely affect LOB shareholders.

In some cases, shareholders would receive a premium for their shares if LOB were acquired by another company. However, state and federal law and LOB's articles of incorporation and bylaws make it difficult for anyone to acquire the Company without approval of the LOB board of directors. For example, LOB's articles of incorporation require a supermajority vote of two-thirds of our outstanding common stock in order to effect a sale or merger of the Company in certain circumstances. Consequently, a takeover attempt may prove difficult, and shareholders may not realize the highest possible price for their securities.

Shares of LOB common stock are not insured deposits and may lose value.

Shares of LOB common stock are not savings accounts, deposits or other obligations of any depository institution and are not insured or guaranteed by the FDIC or any other governmental agency or instrumentality, any other deposit insurance fund or by any other public or private entity. An investment in our common stock is inherently risky for the reasons described in this "Risk Factors" section. As a result, if you acquire shares of our common stock, you may lose some or all of your investment.

Table of Contents

## Item 1B. UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS

There were no unresolved comments received from the SEC regarding LOB's periodic or current reports.

## Item 2. PROPERTIES

The following table sets forth the location of the Company's main offices, as well as additional administrative offices and certain information relating to the facilities.

Office	Address	Year Opened	Approximate Square Footage	Owned or Leased
Main Offices	1741 Tiburon Dr	2013	36,000	Owned
	1757 Tiburon Dr	2015	55,000	
Satellite Wilmington Office	2605 Irongate Dr Ste. 100	2016	10,632	Leased
Atlanta Loan Production Office	3060 Peachtree Rd Ste. 1220	2010	4,455	Leased
Santa Rosa, CA Office	100 B Street Ste. 100	2015	2,386	Leased
Houston, TX Relationship Office	16801 Greenspoint Park Dr Ste. 395	2015	3,514	Leased
Roseville, CA Office	1223 Pleasant Grove Blvd Ste. 120	2016	1,186	Leased
Tampa, FL Office	13401 McCormick Dr	2017	10,846	Leased
Wilmington Flight Operations	1890 Trask Drive	2017	25,500	Owned
Washington, DC Office	2099 Pennsylvania Ave, NW	2017	3,698	Leased

The Company believes that its properties are maintained in good operating condition and are suitable and adequate for its operational needs.

## Item 3. LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

In the ordinary course of operations, the Company is at times involved in legal proceedings. In the opinion of management, as of December 31, 2017 there are no material pending legal proceedings to which LOB, or any of its subsidiaries, is a party or of which any of their property is the subject.

## Item 4. MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURES

Not applicable.

Table of Contents

## PART II

## Item 5. MARKET FOR REGISTRANT'S COMMON EQUITY, RELATED SHAREHOLDER MATTERS AND ISSUER PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES

## Market Information

The Company's voting common stock is traded on the NASDAQ Global Select Market under the symbol "LOB." Quotations of the sales volume and the closing sales prices of the voting common stock of the Company are listed daily in the NASDAQ Global Select Market's listings. As of December 31, 2017, there were 39,895,583 shares outstanding (comprised of 35,252,053 voting common shares and 4,643,530 non-voting common shares) and 330 holders of record (comprised of 325 holders of record for voting common shares and 5 holders of record for non-voting common shares) for the Company's common stock. The Company's non-voting common stock is not listed for trading on any exchange.

The following table sets forth the quarterly high and low closing prices for the Company's voting common stock as reported by the NASDAQ Global Select Market and the dividends declared per share of common stock for each quarter during 2016 and 2017:

Quarter ended	Closing Price		Cash
	High	Low	Dividends Declared
March 31, 2016	\$ 15.29	\$ 12.14	\$ 0.02
June 30, 2016	16.50	13.70	0.01
September 30, 2016	14.96	13.01	0.02
December 31, 2016	19.85	14.10	0.02
March 31, 2017	24.59	18.00	0.02
June 30, 2017	26.05	20.95	0.02
September 30, 2017	25.80	20.75	0.03
December 31, 2017	26.35	22.00	0.03

## Dividend Policy

On September 9, 2015 the Company declared its first quarterly cash dividend of \$0.01 per share after completing its IPO on July 23, 2015. Since declaring this dividend, the Company has declared a dividend to stockholders in each subsequent quarter, with the most recent declared in February 2018.

The timing and amount of cash dividends paid depends on the Company's earnings, capital requirements, financial condition and other relevant factors. Although the Company has paid quarterly cash dividends to its stockholders, stockholders are not entitled to receive dividends. Downturns in domestic and global economies and other factors could cause the Company's board of directors to consider, among other things, the elimination of or reduction in the amount and/or frequency of cash dividends paid on the Company's common stock. See "Supervision and Regulation" under Item 1 of this Report for more information on restrictions on the Company's ability to declare and pay dividends. The Company can offer no assurance that the board of directors will continue to declare or pay cash dividends in any future period.

## Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities

None.

## Securities Authorized for Issuance under Equity Compensation Plans

See Item 12 of this report for disclosure regarding securities authorized for issuance and equity compensation plans required by Item 201(d) of Regulation S-K.

## Purchases of Equity Securities by the Issuer and Affiliated Purchasers

None.

Table of Contents

Stock Performance Graph

The stock performance graph required by Item 201(e) of Regulation S-K is incorporated into this Report by reference from the Company's annual report to shareholders for the year ended December 31, 2017, which will be posted on the Company's website subsequent to the date of this Report. The stock performance graph shall not be deemed to be "filed" for purposes of Section 18 of the Exchange Act, nor shall it be deemed to be "soliciting material" subject to Regulation 14A or incorporated by reference in any filing under the Securities Act or the Exchange Act, except as shall be expressly set forth by specific reference in such filing.

Table of Contents

## Item 6. SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA

The tables below set forth selected consolidated financial data as of the dates or for the periods indicated. This data should be read in conjunction with Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations in Item 7 and the Consolidated Financial Statements and Notes in Item 8 of this Report.

(dollars in thousands, except per share data)	As of and for the Year Ended December 31,				
	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013
<b>Income Statement Data</b>					
Net interest income	\$78,034	\$42,649	\$25,589	\$14,713	\$10,779
Provision for (recovery of) loan and lease loss	9,536	12,536	3,806	2,793	(858)
Noninterest income	172,921	93,539	84,328	60,042	56,477
Noninterest expense	143,165	106,445	71,715	54,526	40,172
Income, before income taxes	98,254	17,207	34,396	17,436	27,942
Income tax (benefit) expense	(2,245)	3,443	13,795	7,388	—
Net income	100,499	13,764	20,601	10,048	27,942
Net income attributable to noncontrolling interest	—	9	24	—	120
Net income to common shareholders	100,499	13,773	20,625	10,048	28,062
Net income (net of tax effect) (1)	100,499	13,773	20,625	10,723	17,258
<b>Period End Balances</b>					
<b>Assets</b>					
Loans held for sale	2,758,474	1,755,261	1,052,622	673,315	430,355
Loans and leases held for investment	680,454	394,278	480,619	295,180	159,438
Allowance for loan and lease losses	1,343,973	907,566	279,969	203,936	141,349
Deposits	24,190	18,209	7,415	4,407	2,723
Borrowings	2,260,263	1,485,076	804,788	522,080	356,620
Shareholders' equity	26,564	27,843	28,375	47,949	12,325
<b>Per Common Share Data</b>					
Net income per share - basic	436,933	222,847	199,488	91,814	48,390
Net income per share - basic	2.75	0.40	0.66	0.42	1.38
Net income per share - diluted	2.65	0.39	0.65	0.41	1.37
Net income per share (net of tax effect) - basic (1)	2.75	0.40	0.66	0.45	0.85
Net income per share (net of tax effect) - diluted (1)	2.65	0.39	0.65	0.44	0.84
Operating net income per share (Non-GAAP) - basic (2)	1.29	0.59	0.54	0.57	0.48
Operating net income per share (Non-GAAP) - diluted (2)	1.25	0.57	0.53	0.56	0.48
Dividends declared	0.10	0.07	0.10	2.18	0.48
Book value	10.95	6.51	5.84	3.21	2.38
Tangible book value (2)	10.85	6.51	5.84	3.20	2.36

Table of Contents

	As of and for the Year Ended December 31,					
	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013	
<b>Performance Ratios</b>						
Return on average assets	4.55	% 0.96	% 2.26	% 1.77	% 6.53	%
Return on average equity	33.80	6.55	14.52	14.11	62.82	
Return on average assets (net of tax effect) (1)	4.55	0.96	2.26	1.89	4.02	
Return on average equity (net of tax effect) (1)	33.80	6.55	14.52	15.05	38.63	
Net interest margin	3.92	3.28	3.26	3.04	2.95	
Efficiency ratio (2)	57.05	78.16	65.25	72.87	59.74	
Noninterest income to total revenue	68.91	68.68	76.72	80.34	83.97	
Average equity to average assets	13.46	14.63	15.53	12.56	10.40	
Dividend payout ratio (inclusive of tax distributions)	3.64	17.50	15.15	447.33	10.65	
Dividend payout ratio (net of tax effect) (1)	3.64	17.50	15.15	419.17	17.32	
<b>Selected Loan Metrics</b>						
Loans and leases originated	\$ 1,934,238	\$ 1,537,010	\$ 1,158,640	\$ 848,090	\$ 498,752	
Guaranteed loans sold	787,926	761,933	640,886	433,912	339,342	
Average net gain on sale of guaranteed loans	100.38	98.86	105.14	115.18	112.64	
Held for sale guaranteed loans (note amount) (3)	1,087,636	754,834	497,875	326,723	144,228	
Annual increase in held for sale guaranteed loans (note amount)	332,802	256,959	171,152	182,495	22,562	
Estimated net gain to be recognized on annual increase in guaranteed loans held for sale (4)	33,407	25,403	17,995	21,020	2,541	
<b>Asset Quality Ratios</b>						
Allowance for loan and lease losses to loans and leases held for investment	1.80	% 2.01	% 2.65	% 2.16	% 1.93	%
Net charge-offs	\$ 3,555	\$ 1,742	\$ 798	\$ 1,109	\$ 1,888	
Net charge-offs to average loans and leases held for investment	0.32	% 0.29	% 0.37	% 1.21	% 3.47	%
Nonperforming loans	\$ 23,480	\$ 23,781	\$ 12,367	\$ 18,692	\$ 8,697	
Foreclosed assets	1,281	1,648	2,666	1,084	773	
Nonperforming loans (unguaranteed exposure)	3,610	4,784	2,037	3,137	1,714	
Foreclosed assets (unguaranteed exposure)	90	246	373	371	341	
Nonperforming loans not guaranteed by the SBA and foreclosed assets	3,700	5,030	2,410	3,508	2,055	
Nonperforming loans not guaranteed by the SBA and foreclosed assets to total assets	0.13	% 0.29	% 0.23	% 0.52	% 0.48	%
<b>Capital and Liquidity Ratios</b>						
Common equity tier 1 capital (to risk-weighted assets)	17.81	% 15.31	% 23.22	% N/A	N/A	
Total capital (to risk-weighted assets)	18.91	16.56	24.12	19.63	% 15.95	%
Tier 1 risk-based capital (to risk-weighted assets)	17.81	15.31	23.22	17.41	15.09	
Tier 1 leverage capital (to average assets)	15.50	12.00	18.36	13.38	10.39	

(1) Net income (net of tax effect), earnings per share (net of tax effect) on a basic and diluted basis, return on average assets (net of tax effect), and return on average equity (net of tax effect) for each year shown was determined by calculating a provision for income taxes using an assumed annual effective income tax rate of 38.5% for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2013, and adjusting our historical net income for each period presented to give



effect to the pro forma provision for federal and state income taxes for such year. For the year ended December 31, 2014 the Company also excluded the initial deferred tax liability recorded as a result of the change in tax status on August 3, 2014 due to the conversion from an S corporation to a C corporation.

(2) See "Non-GAAP Measures" in Item 7. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations of this Report for more information and a reconciliation to the most closely related GAAP measure.

(3) Includes the entire note amount, including undisbursed funds for multi-advance loans.

(4) The estimated revenue from the sale of the annual increase in guaranteed loans is based on the average net gain on sale of loans for that year. This is an estimate based on the respective year activity and does not reflect actual gains to be recognized.

Table of Contents

Item 7. MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

Overview

The following presents management's discussion and analysis of the more significant factors that affected the Company's financial condition as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 and results of operations for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 2017. This discussion should be read in conjunction with the financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K. Results of operations for the periods included in this review are not necessarily indicative of results to be obtained during any future period. Dollar amounts in tables are stated in thousands, except for per share amounts.

Nature of Operations

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. is a bank holding company headquartered in Wilmington, North Carolina, incorporated under the laws of North Carolina in December 2008. The Company conducts business operations primarily through its commercial bank subsidiary, Live Oak Banking Company. The Bank was incorporated in February 2008 as a North Carolina-chartered commercial bank. The Bank specializes in providing lending and deposit related services to small businesses nationwide in targeted industries. The Bank identifies and seeks to grow within selected industry sectors, or verticals, by leveraging expertise within those industries. A significant portion of the loans originated by the Bank are guaranteed by the Small Business Administration under the 7(a) program and to a lesser extent by the U.S. Department of Agriculture Rural Energy for America Program and Business & Industry loan programs. In 2017, the Bank entered into a joint venture, Apiture LLC ("Apiture"), with First Data Corporation for the purpose of creating next generation technology for financial institutions. In addition to the Bank, the Company owns Reltco Inc. and National Assurance Title, Inc. (collectively referred to as "Reltco") which were acquired on February 1, 2017; Live Oak Clean Energy Financing LLC, formed in November 2016, for the purpose of providing financing to entities for renewable energy applications; Canapi, Inc. (formerly known as "Live Oak Ventures, Inc."), formed in August 2016 for the purpose of investing in businesses that align with the Company's strategic initiative to be a leader in financial technology; Live Oak Grove, LLC, formed in February 2015 for the purpose of providing Company employees and business visitors an on-site restaurant location; Government Loan Solutions, Inc. ("GLS"), a management and technology consulting firm that specializes in the settlement, accounting, and securitization processes for government guaranteed loans, including loans originated under the SBA 7(a) loan program and USDA-guaranteed loans; and 504 Fund Advisors, LLC ("504FA"), which was formed to serve as the investment advisor to The 504 Fund, a closed-end mutual fund organized to invest in SBA section 504 loans.

The Company generates revenue primarily from the sale of SBA-guaranteed loans and net interest income. During 2016, the Company also began originating and selling USDA-guaranteed REAP and B&I loans. Income from the sale of loans is comprised of loan servicing revenue and revaluation of related servicing assets and net gains on sales of loans. Offsetting these revenues are the cost of funding sources, provision for loan and lease losses, any costs related to foreclosed assets and other operating costs such as salaries and employee benefits, travel, professional services, advertising and marketing and tax expense.

Executive Summary

Following is a summary of the Company's financial highlights and events for 2017:

- The Company entered seven new verticals bringing the total number of vertical business units at year-end to twenty. Apiture, a digital banking joint venture formed with First Data Corporation, was established in the fourth quarter of 2017 generating a one-time gain for the Bank of \$68.0 million. Apiture combines First Data's and Live Oak Bank's digital banking platforms, products, and services, delivering innovative technology solutions tailored for financial institutions. Both the Bank and First Data Corporation hold 50% voting control of Apiture.
- Net interest income and loan servicing revenue increased by \$38.6 million, or 60.2%, to \$102.6 million in 2017.
- Loan and lease production increased to \$1.93 billion for 2017, a 25.8% increase over 2016.
- \$24.9 million in investment tax credits were generated by the Company's investment of \$90.6 million in renewable energy assets which are leased under operating lease arrangements.



## Table of Contents

During the third quarter, the Company completed a successful secondary public offering which generated an additional \$113.1 million in capital.

Guaranteed loan sales were relatively flat at \$787.9 million in 2017, a 3.4% increase over 2016, as the Company focused on guaranteed loan retention to increase recurring revenue.

Loans held for investment increased by \$436.4 million, or 48.1%, to \$1.34 billion at the end of 2017 as a result of robust 2017 loan originations.

Total nonperforming unguaranteed loans and leases as a percentage of total loans and leases held for investment declined from 0.53% at the end of 2016 to 0.27% at the end of 2017.

Net charge-offs as a percentage of average held for investment loans and leases, for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, were 0.32% and 0.29%, respectively

Core revenues consisting of net interest income, servicing revenue and gains on sale of loans increased to \$181.2 million, a 30.0% increase over 2016.

Total deposits rose by 52.2% to \$2.26 billion at the end of 2017 following successful deposit gathering campaigns. As a result of the December 22, 2017 Tax Cut and Jobs Act, the Company recorded a one-time reduction in tax expense of \$18.9 million arising from the revaluation of its net deferred tax liability.

Reported net income increased by 630.2% over 2016 to \$100.5 million. Non-GAAP net income, which excludes non-routine income and expenses, improved \$27.0 million over 2016, or 134.2%, to \$47.2 million. See "Non-GAAP Financial Measures" below for more information about Non-GAAP net income. The reconciliation of non-GAAP measures is presented at the conclusion of this Item 7.

### Business Outlook

Below is a discussion of management's current expectations regarding company performance over the near-term based on market conditions, the regulatory environment and business strategies as of the time the Company filed this Report. Actual outcomes and results may differ materially from what is expressed or forecasted in these forward-looking statements. See "Important Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements" in this Report for more information on forward-looking statements.

The Company's results for 2017 demonstrated strong underlying financial performance and solid growth momentum. Management continues to focus on building steady recurring revenue streams, promoting change within the financial technology industry, and building out existing verticals while incrementally adding new verticals to the Company's business model. Management anticipates that the Company's held-for-sale and held-for-investment loan portfolios will continue to grow as a result of continued healthy origination volumes and related loan retention to promote recurring revenue, ongoing growth in the construction portfolio as well as ongoing strategic initiatives, including the pursuit of potential opportunities in conventional lending outside of SBA or other government guarantee programs.

### Non-GAAP Financial Measures

Statements included in this management's discussion and analysis include non-GAAP financial measures and should be read along with the accompanying tables which provide a reconciliation of non-GAAP financial measures to GAAP financial measures. The reconciliation of non-GAAP measures is presented at the conclusion of this Item 7 section.

Management believes that non-GAAP financial measures provide additional useful information that allows readers to evaluate the ongoing performance of the Company without regard to transactional activities. Non-GAAP financial measures should not be considered as an alternative to any measure of performance or financial condition as promulgated under GAAP, and investors should consider the Company's performance and financial condition as reported under GAAP and all other relevant information when assessing the performance or financial condition of the Company. Non-GAAP financial measures have limitations as analytical tools, and investors should not consider them in isolation or as a substitute for analysis of the Company's results or financial condition as reported under GAAP.



## Table of Contents

### Results of Operations

#### Years ended December 31, 2017 vs. 2016

The Company reported net income available to common shareholders totaling \$100.5 million, or \$2.65 per diluted share, for 2017 compared to \$13.8 million, or \$0.39 per diluted share, for 2016. This increase in net income was primarily attributable to the following items:

Increased net interest income of \$35.4 million, or 83%, predominately driven by significant growth in the loans and leases held for sale and held for investment portfolios combined with a significantly higher net interest margin; A \$68.0 million one-time gain arising from the Company's fourth quarter equity method investment in Apiture; and A decrease in income tax expense of \$5.7 million, or 165.2%, due to the generation of investment tax credits by the Company's renewable energy leasing business combined with the positive impact of the enactment of the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act on December 22, 2017, as further discussed below.

Other key factors contributing to the year-over-year increase in net income were comprised of the following:

Decreased provision for loan and lease losses of \$3.0 million principally driven by the one-time transfer of \$318.8 million in unguaranteed loans from held for sale to held for investment classification during the second quarter of 2016;

Increased loan servicing revenue of \$3.2 million, or 14.9%, as a result of continued growth in the servicing portfolio due to ongoing loan sales;

Increased net gains on sales of loans of \$3.3 million, or 4.3%, due to higher sale volumes combined with an increase in the average net gain per loan sold.

Partially offsetting the above factors was an increase in noninterest expense of \$36.7 million, or 34.5% largely attributable to the effects of continued investments to support growing levels of business and business diversification.

#### Years ended December 31, 2016 vs. 2015

The Company reported net income available to common shareholders totaling \$13.8 million, or \$0.39 per diluted share, for 2016 compared to \$20.6 million, or \$0.65 per diluted share, for 2015. This decrease in net income was primarily attributable to the following items:

An increase in the provision for loan and lease losses of \$8.7 million, or 229.4%, arising primarily from significantly higher levels of loans held for investment, which included the transfer of \$318.8 million in unguaranteed loans from being classified as held for sale to held for investment in the second quarter of 2016. This increase in the loan loss provision resulted in significant growth to the allowance for loan losses of \$4.0 million. The higher provision also reflected the increase of \$944 thousand in net charge-offs during 2016 as compared to 2015.

Decreased noninterest income from a one-time gain of \$3.8 million in the first quarter of 2015 related to the sale of an investment in nCino, Inc., a former subsidiary of the Company ("nCino") combined with a higher negative loan servicing revaluation adjustment of \$2.2 million; and

Increased noninterest expense of \$34.7 million, or 48.4%, attributable to the rapid growth of the business franchise.

The increase in noninterest expense was predominantly driven by higher salaries and employee benefits of \$22.7 million, or 56.2%, occupancy expense of \$1.1 million, or 31.6%, data processing expense of \$1.7 million, or 47.9%, and other expense of \$3.3 million, or 56.9%. Factors driving these higher non-interest expense levels were increased investments in human capital, infrastructure and regulatory costs to support growing loan production from new and existing verticals as well as development of a new small business loan and deposit platform. Also contributing significantly to the increase in noninterest expense was a renewable energy tax credit investment impairment of \$3.2 million related to a \$4.6 million renewable energy tax credit investment in the fourth quarter. As reflected in lower income tax expense, this investment generated tax savings of \$5.5 million for 2016.

Partially offsetting the above factors were increases in net interest income of \$17.1 million, or 66.7%, loan servicing revenue of \$5.3 million, or 33.0%, net gains on sale of loans of \$7.9 million, or 11.8%. construction supervision fee income of \$1.0 million, or 64.3%, and reduced income tax expense of \$10.4 million, or 75.0%.

Table of Contents

## Net Interest Income and Margin

Net interest income represents the difference between the revenue that the Company earns on interest-earning assets and the cost of interest-bearing liabilities. The Company's net interest income depends upon the volume of interest-earning assets and interest-bearing liabilities and the interest rates that the Company earns or pays them respectively. Net interest income is affected by changes in the amount and mix of interest-earning assets and interest-bearing liabilities, referred to as "volume changes." It is also affected by changes in yields earned on interest-earning assets and rates paid on interest-bearing deposits and other borrowed funds, referred to as "rate changes." As a bank without a branch network, the Bank gathers deposits over the Internet and in the community in which it is headquartered. Due to the nature of a branchless bank and the relatively low overhead required for deposit gathering, the rates the Bank offers are generally above the industry average.

## Years ended December 31, 2017 vs. 2016

For 2017, net interest income increased \$35.4 million, or 83.0%, to \$78.0 million compared to \$42.6 million in 2016. This increase was principally due to the significant growth in average interest earning assets and to a lesser extent by higher yields on these assets which outpaced the growth and change in the cost of interest bearing liabilities. Average interest earning assets rose by \$686.6 million, or 52.7%, to \$1.99 billion for 2017 compared to \$1.30 billion for 2016, while the yield on average interest earning assets rose sharply by eighty basis points to 5.20% for 2017 versus 4.40% for 2016. A substantial portion of the Company's loan portfolio are variable rate loans that adjust regularly in accordance with changes in designated benchmark indices. The cost of funds on interest bearing liabilities for 2017 increased fourteen basis points to 1.38%, and the average balance in interest bearing liabilities increased by \$658.5 million, or 55.6% during the same period. As indicated in the rate/volume table below, the increase in interest bearing liabilities and corresponding cost of funds was outpaced by the positive effects of the increased volume of interest earning assets along with much higher yields, resulting in increased interest income of \$46.2 million versus increased interest expense of \$10.8 million for 2017. The volume of interest bearing liabilities for 2017 was also mitigated somewhat by the August 2017 secondary public offering. For 2017 compared to 2016, net interest margin increased from 3.28% to 3.92% due to the aforementioned effects.

## Years ended December 31, 2016 vs. 2015

For 2016, net interest income increased \$17.1 million, or 66.7%, to \$42.6 million compared to \$25.6 million in 2015 due to favorable volume and interest rate factors. Average interest earning assets rose by \$517.1 million, or 65.9%, to \$1.30 billion for 2016 compared to \$784.7 million for 2015, while the yield on average interest earning assets remained relatively static at 4.40% for 2016 versus 4.39% for 2015. The cost of funds on interest bearing liabilities for 2016 increased slightly by five basis points to 1.24%, and the average balance in interest bearing liabilities increased by \$440.6 million, or 59.3% during the same period. As indicated in the rate/volume table below, the slight increase in rate and increased volume in interest bearing liabilities was outpaced by the effects of the increased volume and rate of interest earning assets, resulting in increased interest income of \$22.8 million versus increased interest expense of \$5.8 million for 2016. The volume of interest bearing liabilities for 2016 was also mitigated somewhat by the July 2015 initial public offering. For 2016 compared to 2015, net interest margin increased from 3.26% to 3.28% due to the aforementioned effects.

Table of Contents

Average Balances and Yields. The following table presents information regarding average balances for assets and liabilities, the total dollar amounts of interest income and dividends from average interest-earning assets, the total dollar amount of interest expense on average interest-bearing liabilities, and the resulting average yields and costs. The yields and costs for the periods indicated are derived by dividing the income or expense by the average balances for assets or liabilities, respectively, for the periods presented. Loan fees are included in interest income on loans.

	2017		2016		2015					
	Average Balance	Interest	Average Yield/Rate	Average Balance	Interest	Average Yield/Rate	Average Balance	Interest	Average Yield/Rate	
Interest earning assets:										
Interest earning balances in other banks	\$232,398	\$2,407	1.04 %	\$222,704	\$1,033	0.46 %	\$84,782	\$300	0.35 %	
Investment securities	76,250	1,432	1.88	62,746	1,132	1.80	50,431	811	1.61	
Loans held for sale	582,245	34,567	5.94	413,468	22,645	5.48	435,508	22,590	5.19	
Loans and leases held for investment	1,097,510	65,066	5.93	602,875	32,462	5.38	213,974	10,750	5.02	
Total interest earning assets	1,988,403	103,472	5.20	1,301,793	57,272	4.40	784,695	34,451	4.39	
Less: Allowance for loan and lease losses	(19,230 )			(10,899 )			(5,254 )			
Non-interest earning assets	239,797			146,169			135,151			
Total assets	\$2,208,970			\$1,437,063			\$914,592			
Interest bearing liabilities:										
Interest bearing checking	\$39,213	\$256	0.65 %	\$20,410	\$116	0.57 %	\$6,604	\$39	0.59 %	
Savings	193,083	2,685	1.39	—	—	—	—	—	—	
Money market accounts	413,648	4,060	0.98	423,035	3,197	0.76	347,429	2,562	0.74	
Certificates of deposit	1,161,651	17,222	1.48	712,327	10,346	1.45	343,625	4,778	1.39	
Total deposits	1,807,595	24,223	1.34	1,155,772	13,659	1.18	697,658	7,379	1.06	
Small business lending fund	—	—	—	—	—	—	6,222	94	1.51	
Other borrowings	34,968	1,215	3.47	28,250	964	3.41	39,515	1,389	3.52	
Total interest bearing liabilities	1,842,563	25,438	1.38	1,184,022	14,623	1.24	743,395	8,862	1.19	
Non-interest bearing deposits	40,831			21,665			15,131			
Non-interest bearing liabilities	28,248			21,046			14,004			
	297,328			210,311			142,044			



Edgar Filing: Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. - Form 10-K

Shareholders' equity						
Noncontrolling interest		19		18		
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	\$2,208,970	\$1,437,063		\$914,592		
Net interest income and interest rate spread	\$78,034	3.82 %		\$42,649	3.16 %	\$25,589 3.20 %
Net interest margin		3.92		3.28		3.26
Ratio of average interest-earning assets to average interest-bearing liabilities		107.92 %		109.95 %		105.56 %

(1)Average loan balances include non-accruing loans.

Table of Contents

Rate/Volume Analysis. The following table sets forth the effects of changing rates and volumes on net interest income. The rate column shows the effects attributable to changes in rate (changes in rate multiplied by current period volume). The volume column shows the effects attributable to changes in volume (changes in volume multiplied by prior period rate). The total column represents the sum of the prior columns. For purposes of this table, changes attributable to changes in both rate and volume that cannot be segregated have been allocated proportionally based on the changes due to rate and the changes due to volume.

	2017 vs. 2016			2016 vs. 2015		
	Increase (Decrease) Due to			Increase (Decrease) Due to		
	Rate	Volume	Total	Rate	Volume	Total
Interest income:						
Interest earning balances in other banks	\$1,301	\$73	\$1,374	\$169	\$564	\$733
Investment securities	51	249	300	111	210	321
Loans held for sale	2,290	9,632	11,922	1,230	(1,175)	55
Loans and leases held for investment	4,625	27,979	32,604	1,473	20,239	21,712
Total interest income	8,267	37,933	46,200	2,983	19,838	22,821
Interest expense:						
Interest bearing checking	25	115	140	(3)	80	77
Savings	—	2,685	2,685	—	—	—
Money market accounts	945	(82)	863	71	564	635
Certificates of deposit	282	6,594	6,876	327	5,241	5,568
Small business lending fund	—	—	—	—	(94)	(94)
Other borrowings	20	231	251	(35)	(390)	(425)
Total interest expense	1,272	9,543	10,815	360	5,401	5,761
Net interest income	\$6,995	\$28,390	\$35,385	\$2,623	\$14,437	\$17,060

Provision for Loan and Lease Losses. The provision for loan and lease losses represents the amount necessary to be charged against the current period's earnings to maintain the allowance for loan and lease losses at a level that is appropriate in relation to the estimated losses inherent in the loan and lease portfolio. A number of factors are considered in determining the required level of loan and lease loss reserves and the provision required to achieve the appropriate reserve level, including loan growth, credit risk rating trends, nonperforming loan levels, delinquencies, loan portfolio concentrations and economic and market trends.

Losses inherent in loan relationships are mitigated by the portion of the loan that is guaranteed by U.S. government loan programs. A typical SBA 7(a) loan carries a 75% guarantee while USDA guarantees range from 60% to 80% depending on loan size, which reduces the risk profile of these loans. The Company believes that its focus on compliance with regulations and guidance from U.S. government loan programs are key factors to managing this risk. Years ended December 31, 2017 vs. 2016

For 2017, the provision for loan and lease losses was \$9.5 million, a decrease of \$3.0 million, or 23.9%, compared to the same period in 2016. The decrease in the provision for loan and lease losses for 2017 was principally driven by the one-time transfer in the second quarter of 2016 of \$318.8 million in unguaranteed loans and leases from being classified as held for sale to held for investment. This reclassification resulted in a \$4.0 million increase in the provision for loan and lease losses during the second quarter of 2016. Partially offsetting the effects of the 2016 loan reclassification were additional reserves recorded to accommodate robust loan and lease growth in 2017.

Loans and leases held for investment as of December 31, 2017 increased by \$436.4 million, or 48.1%, compared to December 31, 2016. This growth was fueled by strong loan origination volume of \$1.93 billion for the year ended December 31, 2017.

Net charge-offs were \$3.6 million, or 0.32% of average loans and leases held for investment, for 2017, compared to net charge-offs of \$1.7 million, or 0.29% of average loans and leases held for investment, for 2016. Net charge-offs are a key element of historical experience in the Company's estimation of the allowance for loan and lease losses.



Table of Contents

In addition, at December 31, 2017, nonperforming loans and leases not guaranteed by the SBA totaled \$3.6 million, which was 0.27% of the held-for-investment loan and lease portfolio compared to \$4.8 million, or 0.53%, of loans and leases held for investment at December 31, 2016.

Years ended December 31, 2016 vs. 2015

For 2016, the provision for loan and lease losses was \$12.5 million, an increase of \$8.7 million, or 229.4%, compared to the same period in 2015. The increase in the provision for loan and lease losses was principally driven by growth in loans and leases held for investment combined with the effect of higher net charge-offs.

Loans and leases held for investment as of December 31, 2016 increased by \$627.6 million, or 224.2%, compared to December 31, 2015. A significant portion of the increase was the result of the Company transferring \$318.8 million in unguaranteed SBA loans from being classified as held for sale to held for investment during the second quarter of 2016. Timing of this transfer was largely influenced by the intent and ability to retain quality credits with higher long term yields. Upon transfer from held for sale classification, loans and leases held for investment become subject to the allowance for loan and lease loss review process. The result of this loan reclassification increased the provision for loan and lease losses by \$4.0 million during the second quarter of 2016.

During the second quarter of 2016, the Company also implemented enhancements to the methodology for estimating the allowance for loan and lease losses, including refinements to the measurement of qualitative factors in the estimation process. Management believes these enhancements have improved the precision of the process for estimating the allowance. The Company estimated that the effect of revisions to the allowance methodology resulted in an approximately \$390 thousand reduction in the provision for loan and lease losses during the second quarter of 2016.

Net charge-offs were \$1.7 million, or 0.29% of average loans and leases held for investment, for 2016, compared to net charge-offs of \$798 thousand, or 0.37% of average loans and leases held for investment, for 2015. In addition, at December 31, 2016, nonperforming loans and leases not guaranteed by the SBA totaled \$4.8 million, which was 0.53% of the held-for-investment loan and lease portfolio compared to \$2.0 million, or 0.73%, of loans and leases held for investment at December 31, 2015.

Table of Contents

## Noninterest Income

Noninterest income is principally comprised of net gains from the sale of SBA and USDA-guaranteed loans along with servicing revenue and revaluation. Revenue from the sale of loans depends upon volume and rates of underlying loans as well as cost and availability of funds in the secondary markets prevailing in the period between completed loan funding and closing of sale. In addition, the loan servicing revaluation is significantly impacted by changes in market rates and other underlying assumptions such as prepayment speeds and default rates. Other less common elements of noninterest income include nonrecurring gains and losses on investments.

The following table shows the components of noninterest income and the dollar and percentage changes for the periods presented.

	Years Ended December 31,			2016/2017 Increase (Decrease)		2015/2016 Increase (Decrease)	
	2017	2016	2015	Amount	Percent	Amount	Percent
Noninterest income							
Loan servicing revenue	\$24,588	\$21,393	\$16,081	\$3,195	14.93 %	\$5,312	33.03 %
Loan servicing revaluation	(13,171 )	(8,391 )	(6,229 )	(4,780 )	(56.97 )	(2,162 )	(34.71 )
Net gains on sales of loans	78,590	75,326	67,385	3,264	4.33	7,941	11.78
Equity in loss of non-consolidated affiliates	—	—	(26 )	—	—	26	100.00
Gain of sale of investment in non-consolidated affiliate	—	—	3,782	—	—	(3,782 )	(100.00)
Gain on contribution to equity method investment	68,000	—	—	68,000	100.00	—	—
Gain (loss) on sale of securities available-for-sale	—	1	13	(1 )	(100.00)	(12 )	(92.31 )
Construction supervision fee income	1,776	2,667	1,623	(891 )	(33.41 )	1,044	64.33
Title insurance income	7,565	—	—	7,565	100.00	—	—
Other noninterest income	5,573	2,543	1,699	3,030	119.15	844	49.68
Total noninterest income	\$172,921	\$93,539	\$84,328	\$79,382	84.87 %	\$9,211	10.92 %

## Years ended December 31, 2017 vs. 2016

For 2017, noninterest income increased by \$79.4 million, or 84.9%, compared to 2016. The increase from the prior year was largely driven by the \$68.0 million one-time gain recognized as a result of the fourth quarter equity method investment in Apiture, see Note 3. Unconsolidated Joint Venture for further discussion. Other contributors to the increase in noninterest income was higher year-over-year levels in the serviced loan portfolio and the volume of loans sold in the secondary market, which generated \$3.2 million of increased servicing revenue and \$3.3 million of increased net gains on sale of loans. Also driving increased levels of noninterest income was \$7.6 million in title insurance revenue from the acquisition of a nationwide title insurance business in early 2017 and increased other noninterest income of \$3.0 million. The increase in other noninterest income was primarily comprised of \$1.9 million of operating lease income from renewable energy assets and trust management income of \$1.1 million. Partly offsetting the overall increase in noninterest income was a higher negative loan servicing revaluation adjustment of \$4.8 million.

The tables below reflect loan and lease production, sales of guaranteed loans and the aggregate balance in guaranteed loans sold that are being serviced. These components are key drivers of the Company's recurring noninterest income.

Table of Contents

	Three months ended December 31,		Three months ended September 30,		Three months ended June 30,		Three months ended March 31,	
	2017	2016	2017	2016	2017	2016	2017	2016
Amount of loans and leases originated	\$483,422	\$514,565	\$395,682	\$381,050	\$586,471	\$356,865	\$468,663	\$284,530
Guaranteed portions of loans sold	211,654	260,125	163,843	210,610	203,714	135,555	208,715	155,643
Outstanding balance of guaranteed loans sold <sup>(1)</sup>	2,680,641	2,278,618	2,584,163	2,102,468	2,521,506	1,970,908	2,410,791	1,894,428

	Years ended December 31,				
	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013
Amount of loans and leases originated	\$1,934,238	\$1,537,010	\$1,158,640	\$848,090	\$498,752
Guaranteed portions of loans sold	787,926	761,933	640,886	433,912	339,342
Outstanding balance of guaranteed loans sold <sup>(1)</sup>	2,680,641	2,278,618	1,779,989	1,302,828	1,005,764

<sup>(1)</sup> This represents the outstanding principal balance of guaranteed loans serviced, as of the last day of the applicable period, which have been sold into the secondary market.

Changes in various components of noninterest income are discussed in more detail below.

**Loan Servicing Revenue:** While portions of the loans that the Bank originates are sold and generate gain on sale revenue, servicing rights for all loans that the Bank originates, including loans sold, are retained by the Bank. In exchange for continuing to service loans that are sold, the Bank receives fee income represented in loan servicing revenue equivalent to one percent of the outstanding balance of SBA loans sold and 0.40% of the outstanding balance of USDA loans sold. In addition, the standard cost of servicing sold loans is approximately 0.40% of the balance of the loans sold, which is included in the loan servicing revaluation computations. Unrecognized servicing revenue above the cost to service is reflected in a servicing asset recorded on the balance sheet. Revenues associated with the servicing of loans are recognized over the expected life of the loan through the income statement, and the servicing asset is reduced as this revenue is recognized. For the year ended December 31, 2017, loan servicing revenue increased \$3.2 million, or 14.9%, to \$24.6 million as compared to the year ended December 31, 2016, as a result of an increase in the average outstanding balance of guaranteed loans sold. At December 31, 2017, the outstanding balance of guaranteed loans sold in the secondary market was \$2.68 billion. At December 31, 2016, the outstanding balance of guaranteed loans sold was \$2.28 billion.

**Loan Servicing Revaluation:** The Company revalues its serviced loan portfolio at least quarterly. The revaluation considers the amortization of the portfolio, current market conditions for loan sale premiums, and current prepayment speeds. For the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, there was a net negative loan servicing revaluation of \$13.2 million and \$8.4 million, respectively. The higher negative service revaluation amount for 2017 was principally driven by the increased amortization speed of the serviced portfolio which was largely impacted by the rising rate environment.

In consideration of the sensitivity of servicing rights as discussed above and in Note 6 to the accompanying audited financial statements, the following table is provided as of December 31, 2017 reflecting the effect on fair value due to changes in yield curve rates.

Change in Yield Curve Assumption	Increase (Decrease) in Value
+300 basis point	\$(5,235)
+200 basis point	(3,613)
+100 basis point	(1,872)
- 100 basis point	2,020

**Net Gains on Sale of Loans:** For the year ended December 31, 2017, net gains on sales of loans increased \$3.3 million, or 4.3%, compared to 2016. This increase was primarily due to a higher volume of guaranteed loans sold and to a lesser extent an increase in the average net gain per loan sold. For 2017, the volume of guaranteed loans sold increased \$26.0 million, or 3.4%, from \$761.9 million in 2016 to \$787.9 million in 2017. The average net gain on sale for 2017

was somewhat higher at \$100 thousand of revenue for each \$1 million in loans sold, compared to \$99 thousand of revenue for each \$1 million sold for 2016.

Table of Contents

## Years ended December 31, 2016 vs. 2015

For 2016, noninterest income increased by \$9.2 million, or 10.9%, compared to 2015. Increases in the serviced loan portfolio and the volume of loans sold in the secondary market, the core components of the Company's business, contributed \$13.3 million to noninterest income growth, including \$5.3 million of increased servicing revenue and \$7.9 million of increased net gains on sale of loans. Other factors contributing to the increase in noninterest income were an increase of \$1.0 million in construction supervision fees earned for monitoring higher levels of multi-advance loans in addition to \$844 thousand in higher earnings from other noninterest income. The increase in other noninterest income was comprised principally of revenue growth at the Company's new trust division. Offsetting these increases were higher downward adjustments in the valuation of servicing rights of \$2.2 million during 2016 compared to the same period in 2015 along with a one-time gain of \$3.8 million in the first quarter of 2015 related to the sale of an investment in nCino.

Changes in various components of noninterest income are discussed in more detail below.

**Loan Servicing Revenue:** While portions of the loans that the Bank originates are sold and generate premium revenue, servicing rights for all loans that the Bank originates, including loans sold, are retained by the Bank. In exchange for continuing to service loans that are sold, the Bank receives fee income represented in loan servicing revenue equivalent to one percent of the outstanding balance of SBA loans sold and 0.40% of the outstanding balance of USDA loans sold. In addition, the standard cost of servicing sold loans is approximately 0.40% of the balance of the loans sold, which is included in the loan servicing revaluation computations. Unrecognized servicing revenue above the cost to service is reflected in a servicing asset recorded on the balance sheet. Revenues associated with the servicing of loans are recognized over the expected life of the loan through the income statement, and the servicing asset is reduced as this revenue is recognized. For the year ended December 31, 2016, loan servicing revenue increased \$5.3 million, or 33.0%, to \$21.4 million as compared to the year ended December 31, 2015, as a result of an increase in the average outstanding balance of guaranteed loans sold. At December 31, 2016, the outstanding balance of guaranteed loans sold in the secondary market was \$2.28 billion, with a weighted average servicing fee rate of 1.04%. At December 31, 2015, the outstanding balance of guaranteed loans sold was \$1.78 billion, with a weighted average servicing fee rate of 1.07%. Prior to January 2010, the Company sold loans for servicing in excess of 1.0%. As loans sold for servicing fee rates in excess of 1.0% prior to fiscal year 2010 amortize, the Company expects that the weighted average servicing fee rate will approach and stabilize at approximately 1.0%.

**Loan Servicing Revaluation:** The Company revalues its serviced loan portfolio at least quarterly. The revaluation considers the amortization of the portfolio, current market conditions for loan sale premiums, and current prepayment speeds. For the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015, there was a net negative loan servicing revaluation of \$8.4 million and \$6.2 million, respectively. The higher negative service revaluation amount for 2016 was due to an increase in the prepayment rates and a decline in the premium market.

In consideration of the sensitivity of servicing rights as discussed above and in Note 6 to the accompanying audited financial statements, the following table is provided as of December 31, 2016 reflecting the effect on fair value due to changes in yield curve rates.

Change in Yield Curve Assumption	Increase (Decrease) in Value
+300 basis point	\$(5,027)
+200 basis point	(3,461)
+100 basis point	(1,789)
- 100 basis point	1,918

**Net Gains on Sale of Loans:** For the year ended December 31, 2016, net gains on sales of loans increased \$7.9 million, or 11.8%, compared to 2015. This increase was primarily due to a higher volume of guaranteed loans sold. For 2016, the volume of guaranteed loans sold increased \$121.0 million, or 18.9%, from \$640.9 million in 2015 to \$761.9 million in 2016. The volume-driven increases in the net gain on loan sale comparisons were partially mitigated by lower average premiums paid in the secondary market. The lower gain per million in 2016 was influenced by the Company's entry into renewable energy lending with high volumes but characteristically lower gains per million sold. The average net gain on sale for 2016 was somewhat lower at \$99 thousand of revenue for each \$1 million in loans



sold, compared to \$105 thousand of revenue for each \$1 million sold for 2015.

Table of Contents

## Noninterest Expense

Noninterest expense comprises all operating costs of the Company, such as employee related costs, travel, professional services, advertising and marketing expenses, exclusive of interest and income tax expense.

The following table shows the components of noninterest expense and the related dollar and percentage changes for the periods presented.

	Years Ended December 31,			2016/2017 Increase (Decrease)		2015/2016 Increase (Decrease)	
	2017	2016	2015	Amount	Percent	Amount	Percent
Noninterest expense							
Salaries and employee benefits	\$74,669	\$62,996	\$40,323	\$11,673	18.53 %	\$22,673	56.23 %
Non-staff expenses:							
Travel expense	8,124	8,205	7,379	(81 )	(0.99 )	826	11.19
Professional services expense	4,937	3,482	2,643	1,455	41.79	839	31.74
Advertising and marketing expense	6,363	4,534	4,333	1,829	40.34	201	4.64
Occupancy expense	6,195	4,573	3,475	1,622	35.47	1,098	31.60
Data processing expense	8,449	5,299	3,583	3,150	59.45	1,716	47.89
Equipment expense	7,479	2,246	2,119	5,233	232.99	127	5.99
Other loan origination and maintenance expense	4,970	2,825	2,069	2,145	75.93	756	36.54
Renewable energy tax credit investment impairment	690	3,197	—	(2,507 )	(78.42 )	3,197	100.00
FDIC insurance	3,206	1,417	514	1,789	126.25	903	175.68
Title insurance closing services expense	2,418	—	—	2,418	100.00	—	—
Impairment expense on goodwill and other intangibles	3,648	—	—	3,648	100.00	—	—
Other expense	12,017	7,671	5,277	4,346	56.65	2,394	45.37
Total non-staff expenses	68,496	43,449	31,392	25,047	57.65	12,057	38.41
Total noninterest expense	\$143,165	\$106,445	\$71,715	\$36,720	34.50 %	\$34,730	48.43 %

## Years ended December 31, 2017 vs. 2016

Total noninterest expense for 2017 increased \$36.7 million, or 34.5%, compared to 2016. The increase in noninterest expense was predominately impacted by increased personnel, equipment, data processing, title insurance business operating and impairment related costs and other expenses primarily driven by the significant growth of the Company's core business. Changes in various components of noninterest expense are discussed below.

Salaries and employee benefits: Total personnel expense for 2017 increased by \$11.7 million, or 18.5%, compared to 2016. A significant driver for this increase was the acquisition of a nationwide title insurance business on February 1, 2017 with 54 full-time and 5 part-time employees. Also contributing to the growth in personnel expense was continued investment in human capital to support the growing loan and lease production from new and existing verticals. Full-time equivalent employees increased from 411 at December 31, 2016 to 515 at December 31, 2017. Salaries and employee benefits expense included \$7.5 million and \$12.1 million of stock based compensation in 2017 and 2016, respectively. Expenses related to the employee stock purchase program, stock grants, stock options, stock option compensation and restricted stock expense are all considered stock based compensation.

Total stock-based compensation included \$1.4 million and \$9.0 million in 2017 and 2016, respectively, related to restricted stock unit ("RSU") awards for key employee retention with an effective grant date of May 24, 2016. See Note 13 - Benefit Plans for more information.

Professional services: Total expenses related to professional services for 2017 increased \$1.5 million, or 41.8%, compared to 2016. The increase is the result of legal fees and closing costs associated with the renewable energy leasing initiative that began in 2017. Additionally, legal costs and consulting expenses associated with the acquisition

of Reltco and the formation of Apiture contributed to the increase.

47

---

## Table of Contents

**Advertising and marketing expense:** Advertising and marketing expenses increased \$1.8 million, or 40.3%, compared to 2016. The increase was primarily the result of efforts to promote brand recognition for new lending activities and maintain existing brand reputation and relationships in existing verticals.

**Occupancy expense:** Total occupancy costs increased \$1.6 million, or 35.5%, compared to 2016. The increase in occupancy expense resulted from higher levels of personnel to support loan production and portfolio service along with related infrastructure. Additionally, the Company began incurring costs related to the planned expansion of its main campus in 2017.

**Data processing expense:** The total expenses associated with data processing and development increased \$3.2 million, or 59.4%, compared to 2016. The increase was principally due to increased levels of activity in the core system from the substantial growth in loan originations, and related software and applications to operate and expand the Company's digital platform. The formation of Apiture resulted in the Company's contribution of development resources that were historically reflected in salaries and benefits. After the formation of the joint venture, services provided by Apiture to the Company are reflected in data processing expense.

**Equipment expense:** Equipment expenses increased \$5.2 million, or 233.0%, compared to 2016. This increase was primarily the result of depreciation expense incurred on solar panels purchased for the renewable energy leasing initiative. Additionally, the Company's aircraft depreciation expense increased for 2017 following its purchase of new aircraft and shortening the useful life of its existing aircraft.

**Other loan origination and maintenance expense:** Total expenses related to loan origination activity increased \$2.1 million, or 75.9%, compared to 2016. The increase is primarily attributable to the ongoing guarantee fee for the retained SBA loan portfolio.

**Renewable energy tax credit investment impairment:** The Company incurred a \$690 thousand and \$3.2 million in impairment charges in 2017 and 2016, respectively, both related to the 2016 renewable energy tax credit investment of \$4.6 million. As stated in the prior year, investments of this type generate a return primarily through the realization of federal and state income tax credits and other tax benefits; accordingly, impairment of the investment amount is recognized in conjunction with the realization of related tax benefits.

**FDIC insurance:** Total Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC) insurance expense increased \$1.8 million, or 126.3%, compared to 2016. This increase was the result of revised premium requirements of all FDIC-insured financial institutions in the latter part of 2016 along with significantly higher deposit levels.

**Title insurance closing services expense:** The Company began incurring expenses related to its title insurance closing services in 2017 with the first quarter acquisition of Reltco. The expenses totaled \$2.4 million for the year and reflects the cost of closing services such as notary and abstracting in the delivery of title insurance agency products.

**Impairment expense on goodwill and other intangibles:** The Company incurred \$3.6 million due to the impairment of intangible assets associated with the acquisition of Reltco. See Notes 1 and 2 for additional discussion around the impairment of goodwill and intangibles at Reltco.

**Other expenses:** Total other expenses increased \$4.3 million, or 56.7%, compared to 2016. This increase was comprised predominately of charitable initiatives, costs associated with the newly acquired title company, a first quarter 2017 loss incurred upon the trade-in of an existing aircraft and general expenditures to support business growth.

Years ended December 31, 2016 vs. 2015

Total noninterest expense for 2016 increased \$34.7 million, or 48.4%, compared to 2015. The increase in noninterest expense was predominately impacted by increased personnel, occupancy, data processing, renewable energy tax credit investment impairment and other expenses. Changes in various components of noninterest expense are discussed below.

**Salaries and employee benefits:** Total personnel expense for 2016 increased by \$22.7 million, or 56.2%, compared to 2015. This increase primarily resulted from further investment in human capital to support the growing loan production from new and existing verticals as well as development of a new small loan and deposit platform.

Full-time equivalent employees increased from 327 at December 31, 2015 to 411 at December 31, 2016. Salaries and employee benefits expense included \$12.1 million and \$1.4 million of stock based compensation in 2016 and 2015,

respectively. Expenses related to the employee stock purchase program, stock grants, stock options, stock option compensation and restricted stock expense are all considered stock based compensation.

Table of Contents

Of the total stock based compensation, \$9.0 million for 2016 included in salaries and employee benefits is related to restricted stock unit ("RSU") awards for key employee retention with an effective grant date of May 24, 2016. On March 23, 2016, the 162(m) Subcommittee of the Compensation Committee of the Board of Directors of the Company approved these RSU awards covering a total of 1,357,500 shares of the Company's voting common stock; comprised of 507,500 shares related to RSU awards and 850,000 shares related to RSU awards with a market price condition of \$34 per share. The vesting of the awards was subject to the Company achieving total revenue of at least \$100 million for fiscal year 2016, which has occurred. In addition, vesting of the awards was subject to the approval by the Company's shareholders of certain amendments to the Company's 2015 Omnibus Plan, including an increase in the number of shares authorized under the 2015 Omnibus Plan, which were approved on May 24, 2016. The grant date of these awards was effective when shareholder approval was received. See Note 11 - Benefit Plans for more information.

Occupancy expense: Total occupancy costs increased \$1.1 million, or 31.6%, compared to 2015. The primary driver of the increase in occupancy expense was increased levels of personnel to support loan production and portfolio service along with related infrastructure including a new building on the Company's main campus that was placed in service during the third quarter of 2015.

Data processing expense: For 2016, the total costs associated with data processing and development increased \$1.7 million, or 47.9%, compared to 2015. The increase was principally due to increased levels of activity in the core system from the substantial growth in loan originations, and related software and applications to operate and expand the Company's digital platform.

Renewable energy tax credit investment impairment: During the fourth quarter of 2016, the Company incurred \$3.2 million in impairment charges related to a \$4.6 million renewable energy tax credit investment. Investments of this type generate a return primarily through the realization of federal and state income tax credits and other tax benefits; accordingly, impairment of the investment amount is recognized in conjunction with the realization of related tax benefits. This investment generated tax savings of \$5.5 million for 2016. This equity method investment aligns with the Company's strategic emphasis in the renewable energy sector. In line with this strategic industry emphasis, the Company originated \$124.1 million in loans that support the renewable energy industry during the fourth quarter of 2016. These loans have no tax credit benefit to the Company.

Other expenses: Total other expenses increased \$3.3 million, or 56.9%, compared to 2015. This increase was largely impacted by a \$1.4 million impairment loss on aircraft as management committed to a plan to sell the aircraft prior to year-end. The sale of this aircraft took place subsequent to year end with no additional losses. A second significant contributor to growth in this expense category was the revised premium requirements for deposit insurance from the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation applicable to all financial institutions in 2016. The increased deposit insurance premiums resulted in approximately \$1 million of additional expense.

#### Income Tax Expense

##### Years ended December 31, 2017 vs. 2016

For 2017 and 2016 income tax (benefit) expense totaled \$(2.2) million and \$3.4 million, respectively, and the Company's effective tax rates were (2.3)% and 20.0%, respectively. The negative effective rate for 2017 was largely a product of significant investments in renewable energy assets which generate investment tax credits, the positive tax effects arising from changes in enacted tax legislation, and the adoption of a stock-based compensation accounting standard.

The Company invested \$90.6 million and \$4.6 million in renewable energy assets that generated \$24.9 million and \$5.5 million in investment tax credits in 2017 and 2016, respectively. Also, on December 22, 2017, the U.S. government enacted comprehensive tax legislation commonly referred to as the Tax Cut and Jobs Act (the "Tax Act"). The Tax Act makes broad and complex changes to the U.S. tax code that affects 2017, including, but not limited to, accelerated depreciation that will allow for full expensing of qualified property. The Tax Act also establishes new tax laws that will affect 2018 and after, including a reduction in the U.S. federal corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21%. As a result of the reduction of the federal corporate income tax rate, the Company revalued its net deferred tax liability, excluding after tax credits, as of December 31, 2017. Based on this revaluation, the Company has recorded a

provisional net tax benefit of \$18.9 million to reduce the net deferred tax liability balance, which was recorded as a reduction in income tax expense for the year ended December 31, 2017. The 2017 tax rate also benefited from the first quarter adoption of a new accounting pronouncement related to the treatment of share based compensation issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board that was effective January 1, 2017; "Compensation-Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting," also referred to as ASU 2016-09.

Table of Contents

Tax Cuts and Jobs Act. Among other things, the new Tax Act (i) establishes a new, flat corporate federal statutory income tax rate of 21%, (ii) eliminates the corporate alternative minimum tax and allows the use of any such carryforwards to offset regular tax liability for any taxable year, (iii) limits the deduction for net interest expense incurred by U.S. corporations, (iv) allows businesses to immediately expense, for tax purposes, the cost of new investments in certain qualified depreciable assets, (v) eliminates or reduces certain deductions related to meals and entertainment expenses, (vi) modifies the limitation on excessive employee remuneration to eliminate the exception for performance-based compensation and clarifies the definition of a covered employee and (vii) limits the deductibility of deposit insurance premiums. The Tax Cuts and Jobs Act also significantly changes U.S. tax law related to foreign operations, however, such changes do not currently impact the Company. Based upon current 2018 projections, the effective tax rate for 2018 is expected to be in the low-to-mid single digits; however, there can be no assurance as to the actual amount because it will be dependent upon the nature and amount of future income and expenses as well as investments generating investment tax credits and transactions with discrete tax effects and any possible changes in the Company's provisional adjustments in revaluing the deferred tax liability at December, 31 2017. The accounting for the impact of the Tax Act is expected to be completed during the fourth quarter of 2018 and the final amount may differ from the provisional amount due to additional analysis, regulatory guidance that may be issued or changes in interpretation.

Years ended December 31, 2016 vs. 2015

Income tax expense for 2016 and 2015, totaled \$3.4 million and \$13.8 million, respectively, a decrease of \$10.4 million, or 75.0%. The reduction in income tax expense for 2016 was the product of the above discussed renewable energy tax credit investment in the fourth quarter of 2016 combined with a year over year decline in taxable income. The Company's effective tax rate for 2016 and 2015 was 20.0% and 40.1%, respectively. The Company intends to continue its emphasis in providing financing to the renewable energy sector and expects that additional income tax credits may be generated that benefit the tax rate during 2017.

Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition

Years ended December 31, 2017 vs. 2016

Total assets at December 31, 2017 were \$2.76 billion, an increase of \$1.00 billion, or 57.2%, compared to total assets of \$1.76 billion at December 31, 2016. This increase was principally driven by the following:

- Growth in cash and investments, largely a product of the secondary offering in August of 2017 of \$113.1 million combined with successful deposit gathering campaigns generating \$247.4 million in new deposits;
- Growth in loan and lease originations combined with longer retention times of loans held for sale, comprised largely of loans in newer verticals which require a period of loan advances to become fully funded prior to being sold;
- Growth in premises and equipment related primarily to construction of a new aircraft hangar, the addition of two new aircraft in replacement of two older ones and the addition of solar panels to meet leasing commitments;
- Increased other assets largely related to:
  - \$68.0 million one-time gain recognized as a result of the fourth quarter equity method investment in Apiture, see Note 3. Unconsolidated Joint Venture for further discussion;
  - income taxes receivable arising from investment tax credits generated by investment in solar panels classified in premises and equipment in which the Company is the lessor; and
  - intangibles of \$4.3 million generated by the first quarter acquisition of Reltco.

Cash and due from banks were \$295.3 million at December 31, 2017, an increase of \$57.3 million, or 24.1%, compared to \$238.0 million at December 31, 2016. This increase was largely the result of the August 2017 secondary public offering which generated net proceeds of \$113.1 million combined with increases in the deposit portfolio. Total investment securities increased \$22.3 million during 2017, from \$71.1 million at December 31, 2016 to \$93.4 million at December 31, 2017, an increase of 31.4%. The portfolio is comprised of US government agency securities, residential mortgage-backed securities and a mutual fund.



Table of Contents

Loans held for sale increased \$286.2 million, or 72.6%, during 2017, from \$394.3 million at December 31, 2016 to \$680.5 million at December 31, 2017. The increase was primarily the result of strong growth in loan origination activities throughout 2017 combined with the Company's continued focus on longer duration of loan retention which has improved recurring revenues.

Loans and leases held for investment increased \$436.4 million, or 48.1%, during 2017, from \$907.6 million at December 31, 2016 to \$1.34 billion at December 31, 2017. The increase was the result of robust loan and lease growth from loan and lease origination activities during 2017.

Premises and equipment increased \$114.1 million, or 176.5%, during 2017, from \$64.7 million at December 31, 2016 to \$178.8 million at December 31, 2017. This increase was primarily driven by construction of a new aircraft hangar and the replacement of two older aircraft with two new ones better suited to service the Company's growing nationwide customer base and the addition of solar panels to meet leasing commitments.

Foreclosed assets decreased \$367 thousand, or 22.3%, to \$1.3 million at December 31, 2017, from \$1.6 million at December 31, 2016. Of this decrease, \$156 thousand was associated with foreclosed assets relating to portions of loans not guaranteed by the SBA.

Servicing assets increased \$304 thousand, or 0.6%, during 2017 from \$52.0 million at December 31, 2016 to \$52.3 million at December 31, 2017. The increase in servicing assets is the result of loan sales slightly outpacing the amortization of the existing serviced portfolio.

Other assets increased \$97.2 million, or 262.7%, during 2017, from \$37.0 million at December 31, 2016 to \$134.2 million at December 31, 2017. The increase in other assets is primarily the result of the \$68.0 million equity method investment in Apiture, the recognition of \$16.2 million in income taxes receivable arising from investment tax credits generated from the investment in solar panel leasing activities, and the first quarter 2017 acquisition of the nationwide title insurance business. As a result of the title insurance acquisition, other assets includes \$4.3 million in intangible assets.

Total deposits were \$2.26 billion at December 31, 2017, an increase of \$775.2 million, or 52.2%, from \$1.49 billion at December 31, 2016. The increase in deposits was driven by successful deposit initiatives to support the growth in loan originations.

Other liabilities increased \$15.2 million, or 78.1%, during 2017, from \$19.5 million at December 31, 2016 to \$34.7 million at December 31, 2017. The increase in other liabilities was principally driven by a \$11.8 million increase in deferred tax liabilities combined with an earn-out contingent liability of \$1.9 million related to the acquisition of the title insurance business.

Shareholders' equity at December 31, 2017 was \$436.9 million as compared to \$222.8 million at December 31, 2016. The book value per share was \$10.95 at December 31, 2017 and average equity to average assets was 13.5% for 2017, compared to a book value per share of \$6.51 at December 31, 2016 and average equity to average assets of 14.6% for the year ended December 31, 2016. The change in shareholders' equity is principally the result of the issuance of 5.2 million additional common shares with net proceeds of \$113.1 million and net income to common shareholders for 2017 of \$100.5 million combined with stock-based compensation expense of \$7.5 million and \$565 thousand related to the issuance of stock in the title insurance company acquisition. These factors were partially offset by cash withheld in lieu of issuing restricted stock upon vesting of \$4.9 million and by \$3.8 million in dividends.

Years ended December 31, 2016 vs. 2015

Total assets at December 31, 2016 were \$1.76 billion, an increase of \$702.6 million, or 66.8%, compared to total assets of \$1.05 billion at December 31, 2015. This increase was principally driven by the following:

- Growth in loan and lease originations combined with longer retention times of loans held for sale, comprised largely of loans in newer verticals which require a period of loan advances to become fully funded prior to being sold; and
- Increased levels of deposits arising from successful deposit gathering efforts.

Cash and cash equivalents were \$238.0 million at December 31, 2016, an increase of \$135.4 million, or 132.0%, compared to \$102.6 million at December 31, 2015. This increase was primarily a result of increases in the deposit portfolio.



Table of Contents

Total investment securities increased \$17.3 million during 2016, from \$53.8 million at December 31, 2015 to \$71.1 million at December 31, 2016, an increase of 32.2%. The portfolio is comprised of US government agency securities, residential mortgage-backed securities and a mutual fund.

Loans held for sale decreased \$86.3 million, or 18.0%, during 2016, from \$480.6 million at December 31, 2015 to \$394.3 million at December 31, 2016. This decrease was primarily the result of the second quarter reclassification of \$318.8 million of unguaranteed loans to held for investment classification, offset by strong growth in loan origination activities throughout 2016.

Loans and leases held for investment increased \$627.6 million, or 224.2%, during 2016, from \$280.0 million at December 31, 2015 to \$907.6 million at December 31, 2016. The increase was primarily the result of the second quarter transfer of \$318.8 million in unguaranteed loans from held for sale to held for investment combined with robust loan growth from loan origination activities during 2016.

Premises and equipment increased \$2.0 million, or 3.2%, during 2016, from \$62.7 million at December 31, 2015 to \$64.7 million at December 31, 2016. This increase was principally comprised of a \$7.5 million deposit on two new aircraft in the latter part of 2016 combined with ongoing construction initiatives to provide infrastructure to support Company growth. Partially offsetting the increase in premises and equipment was the transfer of an aircraft with a basis of \$3.2 million from premises and equipment to other assets. This transfer from premises and equipment to other assets was the result of the Company's conclusion to sell one of its the aircraft due to the ineffectiveness of the equipment to serve the growing needs of an expanding nationwide customer base.

Foreclosed assets decreased \$1.0 million, or 38.2%, to \$1.6 million at December 31, 2016, from \$2.7 million at December 31, 2015. Of this decrease, \$126 thousand was associated with foreclosed assets relating to portions of loans not guaranteed by the SBA.

Servicing assets increased \$7.8 million, or 17.6%, during 2016 from \$44.2 million at December 31, 2015 to \$52.0 million at December 31, 2016. The increase in servicing assets is primarily the result of loan sales significantly outpacing the amortization of the existing serviced portfolio.

Other assets increased \$13.7 million, or 59.0%, during 2016, from \$23.3 million at December 31, 2015 to \$37.0 million at December 31, 2016. The increase in other assets includes \$8.0 million in new cost and equity method investments, of which \$3.7 million is in businesses that align with the Company's strategic initiative to be a leader in online banking for small businesses, \$2.5 million related to community reinvestment and \$1.8 million in renewable energy investment tax credit investments. Other significant contributors to the growth in other assets were an increase in accrued interest receivable of \$2.0 million and the above referenced transfer of an aircraft with a basis of \$3.2 million from premises and equipment.

Total deposits were \$1.49 billion at December 31, 2016, an increase of \$680.3 million, or 84.5%, from \$804.8 million at December 31, 2015. The increase in deposits was driven by successful deposit initiatives to support the growth in loan originations.

Shareholders' equity at December 31, 2016 was \$222.8 million as compared to \$199.5 million at December 31, 2015. The book value per share was \$6.51 at December 31, 2016 and average equity to average assets was 14.6% for 2016, compared to a book value per share of \$5.84 at December 31, 2015 and average equity to average assets of 15.5% for the year ended December 31, 2015. The increase in shareholders' equity principally represents net income to common shareholders for 2016 of \$13.8 million combined with stock based compensation expense of \$12.1 million, partially offset by \$2.4 million in dividends.

Table of Contents

Loans

As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the cumulative total outstanding principal balance of guaranteed loans sold since May 2007 totaled \$2.68 billion and \$2.28 billion, respectively. The Company has historically sold a significant portion of loans it originates in the secondary market while the Company continues to service the loans sold in full. As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, combined loans and leases held for investment and held for sale totaled \$2.02 billion and \$1.30 billion, respectively. Any loan or portion of a loan that the Company has the intent and ability to sell is carried as held for sale.

The average age of the held for sale portfolio as of December 31, 2017 was 9.0 months from origination date. Less than 10% of the current held for sale portfolio is older than two years. The majority of held for sale loans over one year old are comprised of construction loans. Construction loans typically have extended build out periods that inherently result in longer lead times between origination and the ultimate sale date. Approximately 41.5% of the held for sale portfolio is aged between one and two years. All loans classified as special mention (risk grade 5) or worse or being identified as impaired are excluded from the held for sale loan portfolio.

Table of Contents

As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, loans and leases held for investment totaled \$1.34 billion and \$907.6 million, respectively. The increase in loans and leases held for investment is the result of continued growth in loan and lease originations. The following table presents the balance and associated percentage of each category of loans and leases held for investment within the loan and lease portfolio at the five most recently completed fiscal year ends. The following held for investment loan and lease tables do not include net deferred costs and discounts on SBA 7(a) and USDA unguaranteed loans. The net impact on loans and leases held for investment for net deferred costs and discounts on SBA 7(a) unguaranteed loans and leases is \$(2.9) million, \$(926) thousand, \$23 thousand, \$485 thousand, and \$(757) thousand thousand as of December 31, 2017, 2016, 2015, 2014 and 2013, respectively.

	2017		2016		2015		2014		2013	
	Total Loans and Leases	% of Loans in Category of Total Loans and Leases	Total Loans and Leases	% of Loans in Category of Total Loans and Leases	Total Loans and Leases	% of Loans in Category of Total Loans and Leases	Total Loans and Leases	% of Loans in Category of Total Loans and Leases	Total Loans and Leases	% of Loans in Category of Total Loans and Leases
Commercial & Industrial										
Agriculture	\$3,274	0.24	\$1,714	0.19	\$30	0.01	\$—	—	\$—	—
Death Care Management	13,495	1.00	9,684	1.06	4,832	1.73	3,603	1.77	1,782	1.25
Healthcare	43,301	3.21	37,270	4.10	15,240	5.44	12,319	6.06	8,739	6.15
Independent Pharmacies	99,920	7.42	83,677	9.21	41,588	14.86	34,079	16.75	24,026	16.91
Registered Investment Advisors	93,770	6.96	68,335	7.52	18,358	6.56	9,660	4.75	2,817	1.98
Veterinary Industry	46,387	3.45	38,930	4.29	21,579	7.71	20,902	10.27	19,978	14.06
Other Industries	184,903	13.73	94,836	10.44	3,230	1.15	494	0.24	17	0.01
Total	485,050	36.01	334,446	36.81	104,857	37.46	81,057	39.84	57,359	40.36
Construction & Development										
Agriculture	34,188	2.54	32,372	3.56	11,351	4.05	3,910	1.92	—	—
Death Care Management	6,119	0.45	3,956	0.44	769	0.27	92	0.05	989	0.70
Healthcare	49,770	3.70	30,467	3.35	7,231	2.58	2,957	1.45	4,997	3.52
Independent Pharmacies	1,496	0.11	2,013	0.22	101	0.04	215	0.11	101	0.07
Registered Investment Advisors	376	0.03	294	0.03	378	0.13	—	—	—	—
Veterinary Industry	13,184	0.98	11,514	1.27	3,834	1.37	2,207	1.08	4,199	2.95
Other Industries	58,120	4.32	31,715	3.49	658	0.24	145	0.07	—	—

Edgar Filing: Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. - Form 10-K

Total	163,253	12.13	112,331	12.36	24,322	8.68	9,526	4.68	10,286	7.24
Commercial										
Real Estate										
Agriculture	46,717	3.47	5,591	0.62	1,863	0.67	259	0.13	—	—
Death Care	67,381	5.00	52,510	5.78	20,327	7.26	18,879	9.28	11,668	8.21
Management										
Healthcare	126,631	9.40	114,281	12.58	37,684	13.46	26,173	12.86	11,129	7.83
Independent										
Pharmacies	19,028	1.41	15,151	1.67	7,298	2.61	4,750	2.33	3,490	2.46
Registered										
Investment	11,789	0.88	11,462	1.26	2,808	1.00	2,161	1.06	171	0.12
Advisors										
Veterinary										
Industry	113,932	8.46	102,906	11.33	59,999	21.43	57,934	28.48	47,896	33.70
Other										
Industries	134,172	9.96	46,245	5.09	4,752	1.70	1,464	0.72	107	0.08
Total	519,650	38.58	348,146	38.33	134,731	48.13	111,620	54.86	74,461	52.40
Commercial										
Land										
Agriculture	178,897	13.28	113,569	12.50	16,036	5.73	1,248	0.62	—	—
Total	178,897	13.28	113,569	12.50	16,036	5.73	1,248	0.62	—	—
Total Loans										
and Leases	\$ 1,346,850	100.00%	\$ 908,492	100.00%	\$ 279,946	100.00%	\$ 203,451	100.00%	\$ 142,106	100.00%

Regardless of the classification reflected above and discussed in more detail below, the loans the Bank originates are generally to small businesses where operating cash flow is the primary source of repayment, but may also include collateralization by real estate, inventory, accounts receivable, equipment and/or personal guarantees. When collateral includes real estate it is typically owner-occupied. These common attributes among most of the loans the Bank funds is a product of the Bank's specialization as a government guaranteed program lender.

Table of Contents

Commercial & Industrial. Commercial & Industrial, or C&I, loans and leases increased \$150.6 million, or 45.0%, from December 31, 2016 to December 31, 2017. Increases occurred in all verticals, with most of the growth occurring in the Independent Pharmacies, Registered Investment Advisors, and Other Industries verticals which increased \$16.2 million, \$25.4 million and \$90.1 million, respectively, due to the Bank's marketing efforts and brand recognition in these industries. The majority of the increase in the Other Industries categories was attributed to Renewable Energy, Government Contracting and Wine and Craft Beverage, with respective increases of \$26.0 million, \$28.8 million and \$23.8 million. Real estate collateral on C&I loans is often owner occupied. The premises for industries in C&I loans tend to have either a small real estate component or the business occupies a leasehold space. Terms for C&I loans are generally ten years.

Construction & Development. Construction and Development, or C&D, loans increased \$50.9 million, or 45.3%, from December 31, 2016 to December 31, 2017. The increase was also across all verticals, except Independent Pharmacies, with the majority of growth arising from increased industry emphasis on facility expansion principally in the Healthcare and Self Storage verticals which increased \$19.3 million and \$25.2 million, respectively. Terms for C&D loans are generally 20 to 25 years.

Commercial Real Estate. Commercial Real Estate, or CRE, loans increased \$171.5 million, or 49.3%, from December 31, 2016 to December 31, 2017. All CRE verticals experienced growth in 2017, with the largest increases occurring in Agriculture and Hotels, included in Other Industries, verticals with year to year growth of \$41.1 million and \$69.8 million, respectively. Growth in CRE lending was largely attributed to ongoing facility expansion and acquisition activity during 2017.

Commercial Land. Commercial land loans increased \$65.3 million, or 57.5%, from December 31, 2016 to December 31, 2017. Commercial land loans are solely comprised of loans within the Agriculture vertical. The growth in commercial land loans was driven by the Bank's continued expansion into the poultry segment of the Agriculture vertical.

Loan and Lease Concentration

Loan and lease concentrations may exist when there are borrowers engaged in similar activities or types of loans and leases extended to a diverse group of borrowers that could cause those borrowers or portfolios to be similarly impacted by economic or other conditions. The breakdown of total held for sale loans by industry sector is presented in the following table. The following table does not include net deferred costs and discount on SBA 7(a) unguaranteed loans. The net impact on loans held for sale for net deferred costs and discount on SBA 7(a) and USDA unguaranteed loans is \$6.6 million, \$4.5 million, \$3.2 million, \$3.1 million, and \$475 thousand as of December 31, 2017, 2016, 2015, 2014 and 2013, respectively.

Table of Contents

	At December 31, 2017			At December 31, 2016			At December 31, 2015			At December 31, 2014		
	Concentration Risk Unguaranteed	Total		Concentration Risk Unguaranteed	Total		Concentration Risk Unguaranteed	Total		Concentration Risk Unguaranteed	Total	
Commercial & Industrial												
Agriculture	\$-\$2,276	\$2,276		\$-\$1,248	\$1,248		\$171	\$51	\$222	\$—	\$—	\$—
Death Care Management	—4,619	4,619		—841	841		3,483	556	4,039	2,312	2,855	5,167
Healthcare	—22,540	22,540		—5,061	5,061		13,728	2,046	15,774	5,250	4,979	10,229
Independent Pharmacies	—2,357	2,357		—2,930	2,930		29,903	2,833	32,736	24,513	6,696	31,209
Registered Investment Advisors	—12,201	12,201		—10,360	10,360		17,537	5,087	22,624	9,471	5,667	15,138
Veterinary Industry	—17,820	17,820		—5,639	5,639		12,894	2,838	15,732	9,301	5,744	15,045
Other Industries	—67,719	67,719		—32,121	32,121		8,774	6,624	15,398	1,500	963	2,463
Total	—129,532	129,532		—58,200	58,200		86,490	20,035	106,525	52,347	26,904	79,251
Construction & Development												
Agriculture	—81,902	81,902		—96,028	96,028		17,005	83,949	100,954	2,246	11,230	13,476
Death Care Management	—12,278	12,278		—10,299	10,299		1,698	5,778	7,476	36	179	215
Healthcare	—130,154	130,154		—73,596	73,596		11,469	54,374	65,843	1,764	8,695	10,459
Independent Pharmacies	—4,489	4,489		—6,041	6,041		152	760	912	—	—	—
Registered Investment Advisors	—1,128	1,128		—881	881		567	2,835	3,402	—	—	—
Veterinary Industry	—31,038	31,038		—21,377	21,377		3,900	19,360	23,260	1,677	8,385	10,062
Other Industries	—120,990	120,990		—38,698	38,698		1,590	4,934	6,524	16	79	95
Total	—381,979	381,979		—246,920	246,920		36,381	171,990	208,371	5,739	28,568	34,307
Commercial Real Estate												
Agriculture	—47,001	47,001		—	—		2,794	6,455	9,249	1,809	9,043	10,852
Death Care Management	—10,487	10,487		—3,336	3,336		17,808	1,971	19,779	15,572	4,744	20,316
Healthcare	—25,255	25,255		—12,224	12,224		34,749	10,974	45,723	24,668	33,787	58,455
Independent Pharmacies	—975	975		—1,996	1,996		5,661	2,325	7,986	5,082	3,155	8,237
Registered Investment Advisors	—222	222		—1,186	1,186		2,205	—	2,205	2,731	2,464	5,195
Other Industries	—15,145	15,145		—8,039	8,039		32,025	1,690	33,715	26,237	22,932	49,169



Edgar Filing: Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. - Form 10-K

Veterinary Industry Other Industries	—34,021	34,021	—8,333	8,333	9,880	1,104	10,984	2,865	1,818	4,683	6
Total	—133,106	133,106	—35,114	35,114	105,122	24,519	129,641	78,964	77,943	156,907	4
Commercial Land Agriculture	—29,258	29,258	—49,519	49,519	24,382	8,529	32,911	5,472	16,121	21,593	—
Total	—29,258	29,258	—49,519	49,519	24,382	8,529	32,911	5,472	16,121	21,593	—
Total	\$—673,875	\$673,875	\$—389,753	\$389,753	\$252,375	\$225,073	\$477,448	\$142,522	\$149,536	\$292,058	\$

56

---

Table of Contents

Whenever a loan held for sale exhibits credit quality issues (i.e., the loan is on nonaccrual, downgraded to special mention, risk grade 5, or greater) it is transferred to loans and leases held for investment. Accordingly, all loans and leases experiencing charge-offs are classified as held for investment. For loans and leases transferred from held for sale to held for investment during the twelve months ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 there have been no charge offs and \$1.1 million in charge offs, respectively. For loans transferred from held for investment to held for sale during the twelve months ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 there have been no charge offs. As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, there were no loans or leases classified as held for sale which were identified as being impaired or on nonaccrual status.

The following table presents total held-for-investment loans and leases by industry sector:

57

---

Edgar Filing: Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. - Form 10-K

Table of Contents

	At December 31, 2017			At December 31, 2016			At December 31, 2015			At December 31, 2014	
	Concentration Risk			Concentration Risk			Concentration Risk			Concentration Risk	
	Unguaranteed	Guaranteed	Total	Unguaranteed	Guaranteed	Total	Unguaranteed	Guaranteed	Total	Unguaranteed	Guaranteed
Commercial & Industrial											
Agriculture	\$2,942	\$332	\$3,274	\$1,556	\$158	\$1,714	\$30	\$—	\$30	\$—	\$—
Death Care Management	13,295	200	13,495	9,403	281	9,684	4,832	—	4,832	3,603	—
Healthcare	39,123	4,178	43,301	31,791	5,479	37,270	11,900	3,340	15,240	8,779	3,540
Independent Pharmacies	91,982	7,938	99,920	78,953	4,724	83,677	40,025	1,563	41,588	31,686	2,393
Registered Investment Advisors	93,321	449	93,770	67,914	421	68,335	18,358	—	18,358	9,660	—
Veterinary Industry	43,371	3,016	46,387	35,981	2,949	38,930	19,247	2,332	21,579	17,406	3,496
Other Industries	184,393	510	184,903	94,436	400	94,836	3,124	106	3,230	373	121
Total	468,427	16,623	485,050	320,034	14,412	334,446	97,516	7,341	104,857	71,507	9,550
Construction & Development											
Agriculture	30,224	3,964	34,188	32,139	233	32,372	11,233	118	11,351	3,910	—
Death Care Management	6,119	—	6,119	3,956	—	3,956	769	—	769	92	—
Healthcare	48,302	1,468	49,770	30,467	—	30,467	7,231	—	7,231	2,957	—
Independent Pharmacies	1,496	—	1,496	2,013	—	2,013	101	—	101	215	—
Registered Investment Advisors	376	—	376	294	—	294	378	—	378	—	—
Veterinary Industry	13,184	—	13,184	10,173	1,341	11,514	3,296	538	3,834	2,207	—
Other Industries	58,120	—	58,120	31,715	—	31,715	658	—	658	145	—
Total	157,821	5,432	163,253	110,757	1,574	112,331	23,666	656	24,322	9,526	—
Commercial Real Estate											
Agriculture	30,871	15,846	46,717	5,591	—	5,591	1,863	—	1,863	259	—
Death Care Management	65,836	1,545	67,381	50,918	1,592	52,510	19,037	1,290	20,327	17,354	1,525
Healthcare	121,635	4,996	126,631	106,924	7,357	114,281	36,885	799	37,684	24,254	1,919
Independent Pharmacies	17,466	1,562	19,028	15,151	—	15,151	7,298	—	7,298	4,750	—
Registered Investment Advisors	11,789	—	11,789	11,462	—	11,462	2,808	—	2,808	2,161	—
Total	103,303	10,629	113,932	94,081	8,825	102,906	52,911	7,088	59,999	49,903	8,031

Edgar Filing: Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. - Form 10-K

Veterinary Industry											
Other Industries	133,263	909	134,172	45,997	248	46,245	4,752	—	4,752	1,177	287
Total	484,163	35,487	519,650	330,124	18,022	348,146	125,554	9,177	134,731	99,858	11,760
Commercial Land											
Agriculture	136,752	42,145	178,897	109,918	3,651	113,569	16,036	—	16,036	1,248	—
Total	136,752	42,145	178,897	109,918	3,651	113,569	16,036	—	16,036	1,248	—
Total	\$1,247,163	\$99,687	\$1,346,850	\$870,833	\$37,659	\$908,492	\$262,772	\$17,174	\$279,946	\$182,139	\$21,300

58

---

Table of Contents

Loans and leases held for investment generally consist of unguaranteed loan and lease balances, loans and leases classified as special mention (Risk Grade 5) or worse and those identified as impaired. At December 31, 2017, total guaranteed loans and leases held for investment classified as special mention or worse was \$34.7 million with \$19.9 million on a non-accrual basis. Of total guaranteed loans and leases held for investment at December 31, 2016, \$29.0 million was classified as special mention or worse with \$19.0 million on a non-accrual basis. Presently, the Company classifies the guaranteed portion of all performing loans as held for sale.

Agriculture loans and leases represent the largest vertical at \$263.1 million, or 19.5%, of the total held for investment balance at December 31, 2017. From May 2007 through December 31, 2017, the Bank originated \$1.01 billion loans and leases to small business professionals in the Agriculture vertical with \$782.6 million in outstanding principal remaining in the servicing portfolio and \$423.5 million on book. Loans and leases to healthcare professionals represent the second largest vertical at \$219.7 million, or 16.3%, of the total held for investment balance. From inception in May 2007 through December 31, 2017, the Company originated \$1.31 billion of loans and leases to small business professionals in the Healthcare vertical, with \$870.1 million in outstanding principal remaining in the servicing portfolio and \$397.7 million on book. Veterinary loans and leases represent the third largest vertical at \$173.5 million, or 12.9%, of the total held for investment balance. The Veterinary vertical was the original vertical and formed the basis of the Company's existing model. From May 2007 through December 31, 2017, the Bank originated \$1.46 billion loans and leases to small business professionals in the Veterinary vertical with \$798.3 million in outstanding principal remaining in the servicing portfolio and \$237.5 million remaining on the balance sheet. Loans and leases to Independent Pharmacies represent the fourth largest vertical at \$120.4 million, or 8.9%, of the total held for investment balance. From May 2007 through December 31, 2017, the Bank originated \$841.7 million loans and leases to small business professionals in the Pharmacy vertical with \$530.9 million in outstanding principal remaining in the servicing portfolio and \$128.3 million on book.

The Company believes the risk associated with industry concentration is mitigated by the geographical diversity of the overall loan and lease portfolio with loans and leases originated in each of the fifty U.S. states and certain U.S. territories. Additionally, the Company has demonstrated the ability to expand lending activities into selected new verticals and intends to continue this expansion in the future. To the extent that the Company is successful in expanding into new verticals, the Company believes any risk related to concentration within any one industry will be further mitigated.

The maximum loan size under the SBA 7(a) and USDA REAP and B&I programs is \$5.0 million and \$25.0 million, respectively. At December 31, 2017, no single SBA or USDA loan had an outstanding borrower principal balance greater than \$5.0 million and \$25.0 million, respectively. The average loan size at origination for the Company's entire portfolio in its chosen industries in 2017 was \$1.2 million, and the average original lease receivable was \$152 thousand. At December 31, 2017, the average outstanding balance per loan was approximately \$332 thousand, and the average outstanding balance per lease was \$141 thousand. The outstanding principal balance of the full loan and lease portfolio, including those serviced for others, totaled \$4.92 billion of which \$1.34 billion was held for investment.

**Loan and Lease Maturity**

As of December 31, 2017, \$4.52 billion, or 92.0%, of the total outstanding principal loans and leases, including those serviced for others, were variable rate loans that adjust at specified dates based on the prime lending rate or other variable indices. As of December 31, 2017, \$3.47 billion, or 70.6%, of total outstanding principal loans and leases were variable rate loans that adjust on either a calendar monthly or calendar quarterly basis using the prime lending rate or other variable indices. At December 31, 2017, 93.5%, or \$1.90 billion, of the combined held for sale and held for investment loan and lease portfolio was comprised of variable rate loans. At December 31, 2017, \$72.9 million, or 5.4%, of the held for investment balance matures in less than five years. Loans and leases maturing in greater than five years total \$1.27 billion of the total \$1.34 billion. The variable rate portion of the total held for investment loans and leases is 91.6%, which reflects the Company's strategy to minimize interest rate risk through the use of variable rate products.



Table of Contents

	At December 31, 2017			
	Remaining Contractual Maturity of Total Held for Investment Loans and Leases (Excluding net deferred costs and discount on SBA 7(a) and USDA unguaranteed loans)			
	After One Year or Less	One Year and Through Five Years	After Five Years	Total
Fixed rate loans and leases:				
Commercial & Industrial				
Agriculture	\$807	\$ 44	\$ —	—\$ 851
Death Care Management	—	230	3,290	3,520
Healthcare	—	—	3,912	3,912
Independent Pharmacies	—	353	3,454	3,807
Registered Investment Advisors	—	1,163	6,204	7,367
Veterinary Industry	—	165	5,048	5,213
Other Industries	15,261	11,195	17,618	34,074
Total	16,068	8,150	39,526	58,744
Construction & Development				
Agriculture	213	2	—	215
Death Care Management	—	—	351	351
Healthcare	—	—	166	166
Independent Pharmacies	—	—	—	—
Registered Investment Advisors	—	—	89	89
Veterinary Industry	—	—	—	—
Other Industries	—	—	—	—
Total	213	2	606	821
Commercial Real Estate				
Agriculture	—	17	—	17
Death Care Management	—	—	11,497	11,497
Healthcare	—	—	17,456	17,456
Independent Pharmacies	—	—	—	—
Registered Investment Advisors	—	—	1,030	1,030
Veterinary Industry	—	—	9,049	9,049
Other Industries	—	525	7,513	8,038
Total	—	542	46,545	47,087
Commercial Land				
Agriculture	27	312	5,763	6,102
Total	27	312	5,763	6,102
Total fixed rate loans and leases	16,308	8,006	92,440	112,754
Variable rate loans and leases:				
Commercial & Industrial				
Agriculture	702	316	1,405	2,423

Edgar Filing: Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. - Form 10-K

Death Care Management	101	339	9,535	9,975
Healthcare	397	626	38,366	39,389
Independent Pharmacies	12	6,854	89,247	96,113
Registered Investment Advisors	—	4,830	81,573	86,403
Veterinary Industry	526	2,097	38,551	41,174
Other Industries	4,990	18,356	127,483	150,829
Total	6,728	33,418	386,160	426,306
Construction & Development				
Agriculture	—	—	33,973	33,973
Death Care Management	—	2,010	3,758	5,768
Healthcare	—	—	49,604	49,604
Independent Pharmacies	—	—	1,496	1,496
Registered Investment Advisors	—	—	287	287
Veterinary Industry	—	—	13,184	13,184
Other Industries	1,173	—	56,947	58,120
Total	1,173	2,010	159,249	162,432
Commercial Real Estate				
Agriculture	—	—	46,700	46,700
Death Care Management	1,200	1,499	53,185	55,884
Healthcare	—	866	108,309	109,175
Independent Pharmacies	266	37	18,725	19,028
Registered Investment Advisors	—	—	10,759	10,759



Table of Contents

At December 31, 2017  
 Remaining Contractual Maturity of Total  
 Held for Investment Loans and Leases  
 (Excluding net deferred costs and discount  
 on SBA 7(a) and USDA unguaranteed  
 loans)

	One Year or Less	After One Year and Through Five Years	After Five Years	Total
Veterinary Industry	1,301	869	102,713	104,883
Other Industries	1,335	1,744	123,055	126,134
Total	4,102	5,015	463,446	472,563
Commercial Land				
Agriculture	—	125	172,670	172,795
Total	—	125	172,670	172,795
Total variable rate loans and leases	12,003	40,568	1,181,525	1,234,096
Total	\$28,311	\$44,574	\$1,273,965	\$1,346,850

**Asset Quality**

Management considers asset quality to be of primary importance. A formal loan review function, independent of loan origination, is used to identify and monitor problem loans. This function reports directly to the Audit & Risk Committee of the Board of Directors.

**Nonperforming Assets**

The Bank places loans and leases on nonaccrual status when they become 90 days past due as to principal or interest payments, or prior to that if management has determined based upon current information available to it that the timely collection of principal or interest is not probable. When a loan or lease is placed on nonaccrual status, any interest previously accrued as income but not actually collected is reversed and recorded as a reduction of loan or lease interest and fee income. Typically, collections of interest and principal received on a nonaccrual loan or lease are applied to the outstanding principal as determined at the time of collection of the loan or lease.

Troubled debt restructurings occur when, because of economic or legal reasons pertaining to the debtor's financial difficulties, debtors are granted concessions that would not otherwise be considered. Such concessions would include, but are not limited to, a modification of terms such as a reduction of the interest rate below the current market rate for a loan or lease with similar risk characteristics or the waiving of certain financial covenants without corresponding offsetting compensation or additional support.

Table of Contents

The following table provides information with respect to nonperforming assets and troubled debt restructurings at the dates indicated.

	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013	
Nonaccrual loans:						
Total nonperforming loans (all on nonaccrual)	\$23,480	\$23,781	\$12,367	\$18,692	\$8,697	
Total accruing loans past due 90 days or more	—	—	—	—	—	
Foreclosed assets	1,281	1,648	2,666	1,084	773	
Total troubled debt restructurings	10,223	9,856	11,021	10,611	9,736	
Less nonaccrual troubled debt restructurings	(8,129 )	(7,688 )	(8,814 )	(9,805 )	(5,781 )	
Total performing troubled debt restructurings	2,094	2,168	2,207	806	3,955	
Total nonperforming assets and troubled debt restructurings	\$26,855	\$27,597	\$17,240	\$20,582	\$13,425	
Total nonperforming loans to total loans and leases held for investment	1.75	% 2.62	% 4.42	% 9.17	% 6.15	%
Total nonperforming loans to total assets	0.85	% 1.36	% 1.17	% 2.78	% 2.02	%
Total nonperforming assets and troubled debt restructurings to total assets	0.97	% 1.57	% 1.64	% 3.06	% 3.12	%
	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013	
Nonaccrual loans guaranteed by U.S. government:						
Total nonperforming loans guaranteed by the SBA (all on nonaccrual)	\$19,870	\$18,997	\$10,330	\$15,555	\$6,983	
Total accruing loans past due 90 days or more guaranteed by the SBA	—	—	—	—	—	
Foreclosed assets guaranteed by the SBA	1,191	1,402	2,293	713	432	
Total troubled debt restructurings guaranteed by the SBA	7,178	6,723	7,710	8,433	6,139	
Less nonaccrual troubled debt restructurings guaranteed by the SBA	(7,099 )	(6,602 )	(7,550 )	(8,433 )	(4,814 )	
Total performing troubled debt restructurings guaranteed by SBA	79	121	160	—	1,325	
Total nonperforming assets and troubled debt restructurings guaranteed by the SBA	\$21,140	\$20,520	\$12,783	\$16,268	\$8,740	
Total nonperforming loans not guaranteed by the SBA to total held for investment loans and leases	0.27	% 0.53	% 0.73	% 1.54	% 1.21	%
Total nonperforming loans not guaranteed by the SBA to total assets	0.13	% 0.27	% 0.19	% 0.47	% 0.40	%
Total nonperforming assets and troubled debt restructurings not guaranteed by the SBA to total assets	0.21	% 0.40	% 0.42	% 0.64	% 1.09	%

Total nonperforming assets and troubled debt restructurings at December 31, 2017 were \$26.9 million, which represented a \$742 thousand, or 2.7%, decrease from December 31, 2016. Total nonperforming assets at December 31, 2017 were composed of \$23.5 million in nonaccrual loans and \$1.3 million of foreclosed assets. Of the \$26.9 million of nonperforming assets, \$21.1 million carried an SBA guarantee, leaving an unguaranteed exposure of \$5.7 million in total nonperforming assets at December 31, 2017. The unguaranteed exposure in total nonperforming assets at December 31, 2016 was \$7.1 million. Unguaranteed exposure relating to nonperforming assets at December 31, 2017 decreased by \$1.4 million, or 19.2%, compared to December 31, 2016.

As a percentage of the Bank's total capital, nonperforming loans represented 7.8% at December 31, 2017, compared to nonperforming loans of 15.3% of the Bank's total capital at December 31, 2016. It is management's belief that the greater magnitude of risk resides in the unguaranteed portion of nonperforming loans. Adjusting the ratio to include only the unguaranteed portion of nonperforming loans as a percent of the Bank's total capital the ratios at

December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016 were 1.2% and 3.1%, respectively.

Table of Contents

As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, potential problem loans and leases and impaired loans and leases totaled \$76.8 million and \$64.1 million, respectively. Risk Grades 5 through 8 represent the spectrum of criticized and impaired loans and leases. At December 31, 2017, the portion of criticized loans and leases guaranteed by the SBA or USDA totaled \$34.7 million resulting in unguaranteed exposure risk of \$42.1 million, or 3.4% of total held for investment unguaranteed exposure. This compares to total criticized and impaired loans and leases of \$64.1 million at December 31, 2016, of which \$29.0 million was guaranteed by the SBA or USDA. Loans and leases in the Healthcare and Veterinary industries, two of our largest verticals, comprise the largest portion of the total potential problem and impaired loans and leases at 30.0% and 27.3%, respectively. As of December 31, 2016, potential problem and impaired loans and leases were comprised of 30.8% and 32.9% in Healthcare and Veterinary Industry verticals, respectively. The majority of the impaired loans and leases in the Veterinary Industry were originated prior to 2010. The Company believes that its underwriting and credit quality standards have improved as the business has matured. No systemic issues were identified in the year over year increase in potential problem and impaired loans and leases which were comprised of a relatively small number of borrowers in our most mature verticals.

The Bank does not classify loans and leases that experience insignificant payment delays and payment shortfalls as impaired. The Bank considers an “insignificant period of time” from payment delays to be a period of 90 days or less. The Bank would consider a modification for a customer experiencing what is expected to be a short term event that has temporarily impacted cash flow. This could be due, among other reasons, to illness, weather, impact from a one-time expense, slower than expected start-up, construction issues or other short term issues. In all cases, credit will review the request to determine if the customer is stressed and how the event has impacted the ability of the customer to repay the loan or lease long term. To date, the only types of short term modifications the Bank has given are payment deferral and interest only extensions. The Bank does not typically alter the rate or lengthen the amortization of the note due to insignificant payment delays. Short term modifications are not classified as troubled debt restructurings, or TDRs, because they do not meet the definition set by the applicable FDIC and accounting standards. Management endeavors to be proactive in its approach to identify and resolve problem loans and leases and is focused on working with the borrowers and guarantors of these loans and leases to provide loan and lease modifications when warranted. Management implements a proactive approach to identifying and classifying loans and leases as criticized, Risk Grade 5. For example, at December 31, 2017 and 2016, Risk Grade 5 loans and leases totaled \$37.0 million and \$32.1 million, respectively. The increase in Risk Grade 5 loans and leases from December 31, 2016 to 2017 was principally confined to two of our more seasoned verticals; Healthcare (\$5.1 million) and Agriculture (\$3.6 million); these increases were offset by decreases in Veterinary (\$3.1 million) and Independent Pharmacies (\$1.1 million). The underlying cause of the increase in Risk Grade 5 loans and leases from December 31, 2016 to 2017 was ongoing maturity of larger existing verticals. At December 31, 2017, approximately 99.9% of loans and leases classified as Risk Grade 5 are performing with no current payments past due. While the level of nonperforming assets fluctuates in response to changing economic and market conditions, the relative size and composition of the loan and lease portfolio, and management’s degree of success in resolving problem assets, management believes that a proactive approach to early identification and intervention is critical to successfully managing a small business loan and lease portfolio.

Interest income that would have been recorded for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 had nonaccrual loans and leases been current throughout the period amounted to \$1.1 million, \$622 thousand, and \$794 thousand, respectively.

**Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses**

The allowance for loan and lease losses (“ALLL”), a material estimate which could change significantly in the near-term in the event of rapidly deteriorating credit quality, is established through a provision for loan and lease losses charged to earnings to account for losses that are inherent in the loan and lease portfolio and estimated to occur, and is maintained at a level that management considers appropriate to absorb losses in the loan and lease portfolio. Loan and lease losses are charged against the ALLL when management believes that the collectability of the principal loan or lease balance is unlikely. Subsequent recoveries, if any, are credited to the ALLL when received.

Judgment in determining the adequacy of the ALLL is inherently subjective as it requires estimates that are susceptible to significant revision as more information becomes available and as situations and information change. The ALLL is evaluated on a quarterly basis by management and takes into consideration such factors as changes in the nature and volume of the loan and lease portfolio, overall portfolio quality, review of specific problem loans and leases and current economic conditions and trends that may affect borrowers' ability to repay.

Table of Contents

Estimated credit losses should meet the criteria for accrual of a loss contingency, i.e., a provision to the ALLL, set forth in accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (“GAAP”). Methodology for determining the ALLL is generally based on GAAP, the Interagency Policy Statement on the Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses and other regulatory and accounting pronouncements. The ALLL is determined by the sum of three separate components: (i) the impaired loan or lease component, which addresses specific reserves for impaired loans and leases; (ii) the general reserve component, which addresses reserves for pools of homogeneous loans and leases; and (iii) an unallocated reserve component (if any) based on management’s judgment and experience. The loan and lease pools and impaired loans and leases are mutually exclusive; any loan or lease that is impaired should be excluded from its homogenous pool for purposes of that pool’s reserve calculation, regardless of the level of impairment.

During the second quarter of 2016, the Company implemented enhancements to the methodology for estimating the allowance for loan and lease losses, including refinements to the measurement of qualitative factors in the estimation process. Management believes these enhancements will improve the precision of the process for estimating the allowance. These revisions resulted in a \$390 thousand reduction in the provision for loan and lease losses during the second quarter of 2016.

The ALLL of \$18.2 million at December 31, 2016 increased by \$6.0 million, or 32.8%, to \$24.2 million at December 31, 2017. The ALLL, as a percentage of loans and leases held for investment, amounted to 1.8% at December 31, 2017 and 2.0% at December 31, 2016. The increase in the allowance for loan and lease losses was largely attributable to continued growth in the loan and lease portfolio and charge-off experience, as addressed in the Provision for Loan and Lease Losses section of Results of Operations. General reserves as a percentage of non-impaired loans and leases amounted to 1.62% at December 31, 2017 as compared to 1.70% at December 31, 2016. See the aforementioned Provision for Loan and Lease Losses section of earlier Results of Operations section of this Report for a discussion of the Company's charge-off experience.

Actual past due loans and leases and loan and lease charge-offs have increased as the portfolios of mature verticals continue to season. Management continues to work to improve asset quality. Management believes the ALLL of \$24.2 million at December 31, 2017 is appropriate in light of the risk inherent in the loan and lease portfolio. Management’s judgments are based on numerous assumptions about current events that it believes to be reasonable, but which may or may not be valid. Thus, there can be no assurance that loan and lease losses in future periods will not exceed the current ALLL or that future increases in the ALLL will not be required. No assurance can be given that management’s ongoing evaluation of the loan and lease portfolio in light of changing economic conditions and other relevant circumstances will not require significant future additions to the ALLL, thus adversely affecting the Company’s operating results. Additional information on the ALLL is presented in Note 5 to the consolidated financial statements included with this Report.

Table of Contents

The following table sets forth the breakdown of the allowance for loan and lease losses by loan and lease category at the dates indicated.

	2017				2016				2015			
	Allowance	Total Loans and Leases	% of Total Allowance	% of Loans and Leases in Category of Total Loans and Leases	Allowance	Total Loans and Leases	% of Total Allowance	% of Loans and Leases in Category of Total Loans and Leases	Allowance	Total Loans and Leases	% of Total Allowance	% of Loans and Leases in Category of Total Loans and Leases
Commercial & Industrial												
Agriculture	\$56	\$3,274	0.23	0.24	\$33	\$1,714	0.18	0.19	\$5	\$30	0.07	0.19
Death Care Management	47	13,495	0.20	1.00	40	9,684	0.22	1.06	31	4,832	0.42	1.00
Healthcare	2,030	43,301	8.39	3.21	1,922	37,270	10.56	4.10	684	15,240	9.22	3.21
Independent Pharmacies	1,694	99,920	7.00	7.42	873	83,677	4.79	9.21	724	41,588	9.76	7.42
Registered Investment Advisors	1,234	93,770	5.10	6.96	1,907	68,335	10.47	7.52	220	18,358	2.97	6.96
Veterinary Industry	632	46,387	2.61	3.45	834	38,930	4.58	4.29	555	21,579	7.48	3.45
Other Industries	5,058	184,903	20.91	13.73	2,804	94,836	15.40	10.44	547	3,230	7.38	13.73
Total	10,751	485,050	44.44	36.01	8,413	334,446	46.20	36.81	2,766	104,857	37.30	36.01
Construction & Development												
Agriculture	494	34,188	2.04	2.54	635	32,372	3.49	3.56	811	11,351	10.94	2.54
Death Care Management	15	6,119	0.06	0.45	14	3,956	0.08	0.44	9	769	0.12	0.45
Healthcare	359	49,770	1.48	3.70	122	30,467	0.67	3.35	152	7,231	2.05	3.70
Independent Pharmacies	5	1,496	0.02	0.11	7	2,013	0.04	0.22	1	101	0.01	0.11
Registered Investment Advisors	1	376	0.01	0.03	6	294	0.03	0.03	7	378	0.09	0.03
Veterinary Industry	46	13,184	0.19	0.98	59	11,514	0.32	1.27	29	3,834	0.39	0.98
Other Industries	1,110	58,120	4.59	4.32	850	31,715	4.67	3.49	55	658	0.74	4.32
Total	2,030	163,253	8.39	12.13	1,693	112,331	9.30	12.36	1,064	24,322	14.34	12.13
Commercial Real Estate												
Agriculture	484	46,717	2.00	3.47	108	5,591	0.59	0.62	129	1,863	1.74	3.47

Edgar Filing: Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. - Form 10-K

Death Care Management	612	67,381	2.53	5.00	410	52,510	2.25	5.78	99	20,327	1.34
Healthcare	1,128	126,631	4.67	9.40	693	114,281	3.81	12.58	561	37,684	7.57
Independent Pharmacies	425	19,028	1.76	1.41	434	15,151	2.38	1.67	33	7,298	0.45
Registered Investment Advisors	50	11,789	0.21	0.88	220	11,462	1.21	1.26	30	2,808	0.40
Veterinary Industry	2,470	113,932	10.21	8.46	2,230	102,906	12.25	11.33	1,302	59,999	17.56
Other Industries	4,011	134,172	16.58	9.96	1,802	46,245	9.90	5.09	332	4,752	4.48
Total	9,180	519,650	37.96	38.58	5,897	348,146	32.39	38.33	2,486	134,731	33.54
Commercial Land											
Agriculture	2,229	178,897	9.21	13.28	2,206	113,569	12.11	12.50	1,099	16,036	14.82
Total	2,229	178,897	9.21	13.28	2,206	113,569	12.11	12.50	1,099	16,036	14.82
Total	\$24,190	\$1,346,850	100.00%	100.00%	\$18,209	\$908,492	100.00%	100.00%	\$7,415	\$279,946	100.00%



Table of Contents

	2014				2013			
	Allowance	Total Loans and Leases	% of Total Allowance	% of Loans and Leases in Category of Total Loans and Leases	Allowance	Total Loans and Leases	% of Total Allowance	% of Loans and Leases in Category of Total Loans and Leases
<b>Commercial &amp; Industrial</b>								
Agriculture	\$—	\$—	—	% —	\$—	\$—	—	% —
Death Care Management	2	3,603	0.05	1.77	2	1,782	0.07	1.25
Healthcare	875	12,319	19.85	6.06	334	8,739	12.27	6.15
Independent Pharmacies	336	34,079	7.62	16.75	132	24,026	4.85	16.91
Registered Investment Advisors	7	9,660	0.16	4.75	74	2,817	2.72	1.98
Veterinary Industry	114	20,902	2.59	10.27	304	19,978	11.16	14.06
Other Industries	35	494	0.79	0.24	16	17	0.59	0.01
<b>Total</b>	<b>1,369</b>	<b>81,057</b>	<b>31.06</b>	<b>39.84</b>	<b>862</b>	<b>57,359</b>	<b>31.66</b>	<b>40.36</b>
<b>Construction &amp; Development</b>								
Agriculture	362	3,910	8.21	1.92	—	—	—	—
Death Care Management	1	92	0.02	0.05	10	989	0.37	0.70
Healthcare	145	2,957	3.29	1.45	242	4,997	8.89	3.52
Independent Pharmacies	4	215	0.09	0.11	2	101	0.07	0.07
Registered Investment Advisors	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Veterinary Industry	27	2,207	0.61	1.09	96	4,199	3.52	2.95
Other Industries	47	145	1.07	0.07	—	—	—	—
<b>Total</b>	<b>586</b>	<b>9,526</b>	<b>13.29</b>	<b>4.69</b>	<b>350</b>	<b>10,286</b>	<b>12.85</b>	<b>7.24</b>
<b>Commercial Real Estate</b>								
Agriculture	25	259	0.57	0.13	—	—	—	—
Death Care Management	77	18,879	1.75	9.28	60	11,668	2.20	8.21
Healthcare	794	26,173	18.02	12.86	320	11,129	11.75	7.83
Independent Pharmacies	32	4,750	0.73	2.33	54	3,490	1.98	2.46
Registered Investment Advisors	—	2,161	—	1.06	4	171	0.15	0.12
Veterinary Industry	1,122	57,934	25.46	28.48	965	47,896	35.44	33.70
Other Industries	241	1,464	5.47	0.72	108	107	3.97	0.08
<b>Total</b>	<b>2,291</b>	<b>111,620</b>	<b>52.00</b>	<b>54.86</b>	<b>1,511</b>	<b>74,461</b>	<b>55.49</b>	<b>52.40</b>
<b>Commercial Land</b>								
Agriculture	161	1,248	3.65	0.61	—	—	—	—
<b>Total</b>	<b>161</b>	<b>1,248</b>	<b>3.65</b>	<b>0.61</b>	<b>—</b>	<b>—</b>	<b>—</b>	<b>—</b>
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$4,407</b>	<b>\$203,451</b>	<b>100.00</b>	<b>% 100.00</b>	<b>% \$2,723</b>	<b>\$142,106</b>	<b>100.00</b>	<b>% 100.00</b>

Table of Contents

Analysis of Loan and Lease Loss Experience. The following table sets forth an analysis of the allowance for loan and lease losses for the years indicated.

	2017	2016	2015	2014	2013
Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses:					
Beginning Balance	\$18,209	\$7,415	\$4,407	\$2,723	\$5,108
Provision	9,536	12,536	3,806	2,793	(858 )
Charge-offs:					
Commercial & Industrial					
Healthcare	(1,367 )	(1,137 )	(44 )	(209 )	(419 )
Independent Pharmacies	(882 )	(6 )	(274 )	(294 )	—
Registered Investment Advisors	(236 )	—	—	—	—
Veterinary Industry	(132 )	(321 )	(660 )	(195 )	(269 )
Total	(2,617 )	(1,464 )	(978 )	(698 )	(688 )
Commercial Real Estate					
Death Care Management	—	—	—	(135 )	—
Healthcare	(14 )	—	(29 )	(25 )	(76 )
Independent Pharmacies	(541 )	—	—	—	—
Veterinary Industry	(622 )	(707 )	(135 )	(263 )	(819 )
Other Industries	—	—	—	(92 )	(365 )
Total	(1,177 )	(707 )	(164 )	(515 )	(1,260 )
Commercial Land					
Agriculture	(58 )	(63 )	—	—	—
Total	(58 )	(63 )	—	—	—
Total charge-offs	(3,852 )	(2,234 )	(1,142 )	(1,213 )	(1,948 )
Recoveries:					
Commercial & Industrial					
Healthcare	79	104	126	17	2
Independent Pharmacies	3	40	70	—	—
Veterinary Industry	19	342	17	15	25
Total	101	486	213	32	27
Commercial Real Estate					
Independent Pharmacies	170	—	—	—	—
Veterinary Industry	21	6	131	72	32
Other Industries	—	—	—	—	1
Total	191	6	131	72	33
Commercial Land					
Agriculture	5	—	—	—	—
Total	5	—	—	—	—
Total recoveries	297	492	344	104	60
Net transfer to loans held for sale	—	—	—	—	361
Ending Balance	\$24,190	\$18,209	\$7,415	\$4,407	\$2,723

Table of Contents

## Investment Securities

Investment securities totaled \$93.4 million at December 31, 2017, an increase of \$22.3 million, or 31.4%, compared to \$71.1 million at December 31, 2016. The increase in the investment portfolio for 2017 was primarily related to purchases of \$16.0 million in mortgage-backed securities for purposes of complying with the Community Reinvestment Act and purchases of \$12.1 million in mortgage-backed securities to increase cashflow and yield. In addition, the Company purchased \$14.9 million in US government agencies to replace \$10.0 million of maturities in US government agency securities. There was also \$78 thousand of dividend reinvestment in the 504 Fund mutual fund during 2017.

The investment securities portfolio consists entirely of available-for-sale securities. The Company purchases securities for the investment securities portfolio to manage interest rate risk, ensure a stable source of liquidity and to provide a steady source of income in excess of cost of funds.

The following table sets forth the amortized cost and fair values of the securities portfolio at the dates indicated.

	2017		2016		2015	
	Amortized Cost	Fair Value	Amortized Cost	Fair Value	Amortized Cost	Fair Value
Available-for-sale securities:						
US government agencies	\$22,778	\$22,624	\$17,803	\$17,823	\$21,992	\$22,068
Residential mortgage-backed securities	70,167	68,696	52,301	51,273	30,131	29,758
Mutual fund	2,090	2,035	2,012	1,960	1,951	1,936
Total available-for-sale	\$95,035	\$93,355	\$72,116	\$71,056	\$54,074	\$53,762
Total securities	\$95,035	\$93,355	\$72,116	\$71,056	\$54,074	\$53,762

The \$93.4 million of US government agencies, residential mortgage-backed securities and mutual fund in the investment portfolio as of December 31, 2017 was spread across seven different issuers. There are forty-two unique securities that have an average fair value of \$2.2 million, with the largest single security having a fair value of \$6.2 million as of December 31, 2017.

At December 31, 2017, the duration of the overall available-for-sale securities portfolio, excluding the mutual fund, was approximately 6.21 years.

The following table sets forth the stated maturities and weighted average yields of investment securities at December 31, 2017. Certain mortgage related securities have adjustable interest rates and will reprice annually within the various maturity ranges excluding mutual funds. These repricing schedules are not reflected in the tables below.

	Total Amortized Cost	Within One Year		After One to Five Years		After Five to Ten Years		After Ten Years	
		Amortized Cost	Average Yield	Amortized Cost	Average Yield	Amortized Cost	Average Yield	Amortized Cost	Average Yield
Available-for-sale securities:									
US government securities	\$ 22,778	\$6,323	1.32 %	\$16,455	1.69 %	\$—	— %	\$—	— %
Residential mortgage-backed securities	70,167	—	—	—	—	6,815	2.40	63,352	3.18
Total available-for-sale securities	\$ 92,945	\$6,323	1.32 %	\$16,455	1.69 %	\$6,815	2.40 %	\$63,352	3.18 %
Total securities	\$ 92,945	\$6,323	1.32 %	\$16,455	1.69 %	\$6,815	2.40 %	\$63,352	3.18 %

Table of Contents

## Deposits

The following table sets forth the composition of deposits.

	2017		2016		2015				
	Total	Percent	Total	Percent	Total	Percent			
Period end:									
Noninterest-bearing demand deposits	\$57,868	2.56 %	\$27,990	1.88 %	\$21,502	2.67 %			
Interest-bearing deposits:									
Interest-bearing checking	36,978	1.64	27,402	1.85	7,937	0.99			
Money market	188,146	8.32	489,978	32.99	367,573	45.67			
Savings	696,989	30.84	—	—	—	—			
Time deposits	1,280,282	56.64	939,706	63.28	407,776	50.67			
Total	2,202,395	97.44	1,457,086	98.12	783,286	97.33			
Total period end deposits	\$2,260,263	100.00%	\$1,485,076	100.00%	\$804,788	100.00%			
	2017		2016		2015				
	Total	Percent	Average Rate	Total	Percent	Average Rate	Total	Percent	Average Rate
Average:									
Noninterest-bearing demand deposits	\$40,831	2.21 %	— %	\$21,665	1.84 %	— %	\$15,131	2.12 %	— %
Interest-bearing deposits:									
Interest-bearing checking	39,213	2.12	0.65	20,410	1.73	0.57	6,604	0.93	0.59
Money market	413,648	22.38	0.98	423,035	35.93	0.76	347,429	48.74	0.73
Savings	193,083	10.45	1.39	—	—	—	—	—	—
Time deposits	1,161,651	62.84	1.48	712,327	60.50	1.45	343,625	48.21	1.39
Total average deposits	\$1,848,426	100.00%	1.34 %	\$1,177,437	100.00%	1.18 %	\$712,789	100.00%	1.06 %

Deposits increased to \$2.26 billion at December 31, 2017 from \$1.49 billion at December 31, 2016, an increase of \$775.2 million, or 52.2%. This increase was primarily due to the growth of the Company's customer base in the new savings product, enhanced by a nationwide marketing campaign with attractive rates. Noninterest-bearing deposits increased \$29.9 million, or 106.7%, during this period, and interest-bearing deposits increased \$745.3 million, or 51.2%, during the same period. The growth in accounts during 2017 was primarily in savings and time deposits, although noninterest-bearing checking increased significantly, primarily through increased trust account deposits. Long-term wholesale funding contributed to the time deposit increases.

In early 2015, the Company launched a nationwide marketing campaign through a rate listing website and also started allowing customers to open accounts online. This nationwide deposit campaign was primarily responsible for the large increase in deposits during 2015. Throughout 2016, the Company continued its nationwide deposit advertising which accounted for the time deposit increases and gained additional trust account deposits. Wholesale funding contributed to the money market deposit increases.

At December 31, 2017, the aggregate balance of time deposit accounts individually equal to or greater than \$100 thousand totaled \$769.5 million. At December 31, 2017, 83.3% of all time deposit accounts in amounts equal to or greater than \$100 thousand were scheduled to mature within one year. The maturity profile of time deposits at December 31, 2017 is as follows:

Maturity Period	Three months or less	More than three months to six months	More than six months to twelve months	More than twelve months
-----------------	----------------------	--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	-------------------------

Edgar Filing: Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. - Form 10-K

Time deposits, \$100,000 and over	\$368,747	\$136,004	\$135,964	\$128,799
Other time deposits	117,668	85,388	48,393	259,319
Total time deposits	\$486,415	\$221,392	\$184,357	\$388,118

69

---

Table of Contents

**Borrowings**

On October 20, 2017, the Company entered into a revolving line of credit of \$20.0 million with an unaffiliated commercial bank. The line of credit is unsecured and accrues interest at 30 day LIBOR plus 1.750% for a term of 12 months. Payments are interest only with all principal and accrued interest due on October 19, 2018. The terms of this loan require the Company to maintain minimum capital and debt service coverage ratios. There is no outstanding balance and \$20.0 million of available credit is remaining on this line of credit at December 31, 2017.

Total long-term borrowings decreased \$1.3 million at December 31, 2017 from December 31, 2016, as a result of the following:

On September 11, 2014, the Company financed the construction of an additional building located on the Company's Tiburon Drive campus using a \$24.0 million construction line of credit with an unaffiliated commercial bank, secured by both properties at its Tiburon Drive main office location. At December 31, 2017, the construction line was fully advanced with \$23.0 million outstanding on the construction line of credit. Payments were interest only through September 11, 2016 at a fixed rate of 3.95% for a term of 84 months. Monthly principal and interest payments of \$146 thousand began in October 2016 with all principal and accrued interest due on September 11, 2021. There is no remaining available credit on this construction line at December 31, 2017.

On February 23, 2015 the Company transferred two related party loans to an unaffiliated commercial bank in exchange for \$4.7 million. The exchange price equated to the unpaid principal balance plus accrued but uncollected interest at the time of transfer. The terms of the transfer agreement with the unaffiliated commercial bank identified the transaction as a secured borrowing for accounting purposes. Interest accrues at prime plus 1% with monthly principal and interest payments over a term of 60 months. The interest rate at December 31, 2017 was 5.25%. The maturity date is October 5, 2019. The pledged collateral is classified in other assets with a fair value of \$3.6 million at December 31, 2017. The underlying loans carry a Risk Grade of 3 and are current with no delinquencies.

On September 18, 2014, the Company entered into a revolving line of credit of \$8.1 million with an unaffiliated commercial bank. On April 18, 2017, the company renewed and increased the revolving line of credit to \$25.0 million, with no outstanding balance at December 31, 2017. The line of credit is unsecured and accrues interest at prime minus 0.50% for a term of 24 months. Payments are interest only with all principal and accrued interest due on April 30, 2019. The terms of this loan require the Company to maintain minimum capital, liquidity and Texas ratios. There is \$25.0 million of remaining available credit on this line of credit at December 31, 2017.

**Small Business Lending Fund**

In April 2011, the Company elected to participate in the Small Business Lending Fund program, or the SBLF program, whereby the U.S. Treasury agreed to purchase \$6.8 million in senior debt securities issued by the Company. The SBLF funds were received on September 13, 2011, with the first interest payment due on January 1, 2012. During the initial interest period the applicable interest rate was set at 1.5%. For all remaining interest periods, the interest rate was determined based on a formula which encompassed the percentage change in qualified lending as well as a non-qualifying portion percentage. This rate could range from 1.5% to 10.8%, with interest payable quarterly in arrears. On December 1, 2015, the Company redeemed the SBLF Securities by repaying the U.S. Treasury in full.

## Table of Contents

### Liquidity Management

Liquidity management refers to the ability to meet day-to-day cash flow requirements based primarily on activity in loan and deposit accounts of the Company's customers. Liquidity is immediately available from four major sources: (a) cash on hand and on deposit at other banks; (b) the outstanding balance of federal funds sold; (c) the market value of unpledged investment securities; and (d) availability under lines of credit. At December 31, 2017, the total amount of these four items was \$674.2 million, or 24.4% of total assets, a decrease of 3.8% of total assets from \$495.8 million, or 28.2% of total assets, at December 31, 2016.

Loans and other assets are funded primarily by loan sales, wholesale deposits and core deposits. To date, an increasing retail deposit base and a stable amount of brokered deposits have been adequate to meet loan obligations, while maintaining the desired level of immediate liquidity. Additionally, an investment securities portfolio is available for both immediate and secondary liquidity purposes.

At December 31, 2017, none of the investment securities portfolio was pledged to secure public deposits or pledged to retail repurchase agreements, while \$2.5 million was pledged for uninsured trust assets and \$100 thousand was pledged for trust activities in the State of Ohio, leaving \$90.8 million available to be pledged as collateral. In addition, \$1.5 million held in a Money Market account at another bank was pledged for ACH returned item processing related to online deposit account openings.

### Asset/Liability Management and Interest Rate Sensitivity

One of the primary objectives of asset/liability management is to maximize the net interest margin while minimizing the earnings risk associated with changes in interest rates. One method used to manage interest rate sensitivity is to measure, over various time periods, the interest rate sensitivity positions, or gaps. This method, however, addresses only the magnitude of timing differences and does not address earnings or market value. Therefore, management uses an earnings simulation model to prepare, on a regular basis, earnings projections based on a range of interest rate scenarios to more accurately measure interest rate risk. For more information, see Item 7A of this Report.

The Company's balance sheet is asset-sensitive with a total cumulative gap position of 3.92% at December 31, 2017. During the year ending December 31, 2017, the production of variable rate loans outpaced the variable deposits that changed the portfolio mix to slightly more asset-sensitive. An asset-sensitive position means that net interest income will generally move in the same direction as interest rates. For instance, if interest rates increase, net interest income can be expected to increase, and if interest rates decrease, net interest income can be expected to decrease. The Company attempts to mitigate interest rate risk with the majority of assets and liabilities being short-term, adjustable rate instruments. The quarterly revaluation adjustment to the servicing asset, however, adjusts in an opposite direction to interest rate changes. Asset/liability sensitivity is primarily derived from the prime-based loans that adjust as the prime interest rate changes in conjunction with the longer duration of indeterminate term deposits.

### Capital

The maintenance of appropriate levels of capital is a management priority and is monitored on a regular basis. The Company's principal goals related to the maintenance of capital are to provide adequate capital to support the Company's risk profile consistent with the risk appetite approved by the Board of Directors; provide financial flexibility to support future growth and client needs; comply with relevant laws, regulations, and supervisory guidance; achieve optimal credit ratings for the Company and its subsidiaries; and provide a competitive return to shareholders. Management regularly monitors the capital position of the Company on both a consolidated and bank level basis. In this regard, management's goal is to maintain capital at levels that are in excess of the regulatory "well capitalized" levels. Risk-based capital ratios, which include Tier 1 Capital, Total Capital and Common Equity Tier 1 Capital, are calculated based on regulatory guidance related to the measurement of capital and risk-weighted assets.

Table of Contents

Capital amounts and ratios as of December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 are presented in the table below.

	Actual		Minimum Capital Requirement		Minimum To Be Well Capitalized Under Prompt Corrective Action Provisions <sup>(1)</sup>	
	Amount	Ratio	Amount	Ratio	Amount	Ratio
Consolidated - December 31, 2017						
Common Equity Tier 1 (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$390,816	17.81%	\$98,764	4.50%	N/A	N/A
Total Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$415,006	18.91%	\$175,580	8.00%	N/A	N/A
Tier 1 Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$390,816	17.81%	\$131,685	6.00%	N/A	N/A
Tier 1 Capital (to Average Assets)	\$390,816	15.50%	\$100,828	4.00%	N/A	N/A
Bank - December 31, 2017						
Common Equity Tier 1 (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$277,943	12.89%	\$97,060	4.50%	\$140,197	6.50%
Total Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$302,385	14.02%	\$172,551	8.00%	\$215,688	10.00%
Tier 1 Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$277,943	12.89%	\$129,413	6.00%	\$172,551	8.00%
Tier 1 Capital (to Average Assets)	\$277,943	11.36%	\$97,864	4.00%	\$122,330	5.00%
Consolidated - December 31, 2016						
Common Equity Tier 1 (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$206,670	15.31%	\$60,732	4.50%	N/A	N/A
Total Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$223,559	16.56%	\$107,968	8.00%	N/A	N/A
Tier 1 Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$206,670	15.31%	\$80,976	6.00%	N/A	N/A
Tier 1 Capital (to Average Assets)	\$206,670	12.00%	\$68,919	4.00%	N/A	N/A
Bank - December 31, 2016						
Common Equity Tier 1 (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$139,078	10.68%	\$58,579	4.50%	\$84,615	6.50%
Total Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$155,423	11.94%	\$104,141	8.00%	\$130,177	10.00%
Tier 1 Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$139,078	10.68%	\$78,106	6.00%	\$104,141	8.00%
Tier 1 Capital (to Average Assets)	\$139,078	8.41%	\$66,142	4.00%	\$82,678	5.00%
Consolidated - December 31, 2015						
Common Equity Tier 1 (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$191,366	23.22%	\$37,087	4.50%	N/A	N/A
Total Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$198,781	24.12%	\$65,933	8.00%	N/A	N/A
Tier 1 Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$191,366	23.22%	\$49,450	6.00%	N/A	N/A
Tier 1 Capital (to Average Assets)	\$191,366	18.36%	\$41,702	4.00%	N/A	N/A
Bank - December 31, 2015						
Common Equity Tier 1 (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$96,056	12.28%	\$35,207	4.50%	\$50,855	6.50%
Total Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$103,471	13.23%	\$62,591	8.00%	\$78,238	10.00%
Tier 1 Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$96,056	12.28%	\$46,943	6.00%	\$62,591	6.00%
Tier 1 Capital (to Average Assets)	\$96,056	9.75%	\$39,398	4.00%	\$49,248	5.00%

(1) Prompt corrective action provisions are not applicable at the bank holding company level.



Table of Contents

## Contractual Obligations

The following table presents the Company's significant fixed and determinable contractual obligations by payment date as of December 31, 2017. The payment amounts represent those amounts contractually due to the recipient. The table excludes liabilities recorded where management cannot reasonably estimate the timing of any payments that may be required in connection with these liabilities.

	Payments Due by Period				
	Total	Less than One Year	One to Three Years	Three to Five Years	More Than Five Years
Contractual Obligations					
Deposits without stated maturity	\$979,981	\$979,981	\$—	\$—	\$—
Time deposits	1,280,282	892,164	222,361	89,683	76,074
Long term borrowings	26,564	853	5,386	20,325	—
Operating lease obligations	2,836	964	1,173	469	230
Total	\$2,289,663	\$1,873,962	\$228,920	\$110,477	\$76,304

As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company had commitments for on-balance sheet instruments in the amount of \$3.5 million and \$4.9 million, respectively.

## Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements

In the normal course of operations, the Company engages in a variety of financial transactions that, in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, are not recorded in the consolidated financial statements. These transactions involve, to varying degrees, elements of credit, interest rate and liquidity risk. Such transactions are used primarily to manage customers' requests for funding and take the form of loan or investment commitments, lines of credit and letters of credit.

The contractual amounts of commitments to extend credit represent the amounts of potential accounting loss should the contract be fully drawn upon, the customer defaults and any existing collateral has no value. The Company uses the same credit policies in making commitments and conditional obligations as the Company does for on-balance sheet instruments. Financial instruments whose contract amounts represent credit risk at December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 are as follows:

	2017	2016	2015
Commitments to extend credit (1)	\$1,701,137	\$1,342,271	\$737,572
Standby letters of credit	2,298	343	—
Solar purchase commitments	106,921	—	—
Airplane purchase agreement commitments	25,450	21,500	—
Total commitments	\$1,835,806	\$1,364,114	\$737,572

Commitments to extend credit are agreements to lend to a customer as long as there is no violation of any condition (1) established in the contract. Commitments may require payment of a fee and generally have fixed expiration dates or other termination clauses.

## Critical Accounting Policies and Estimates

The preparation of consolidated financial statements in accordance with GAAP requires the Company to make estimates and judgments that affect reported amounts of assets, liabilities, income and expenses and related disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities. The Company bases estimates on historical experience and on various other assumptions that are believed to be reasonable under current circumstances, results of which form the basis for making judgments about the carrying value of certain assets and liabilities that are not readily available from other sources. Estimates are evaluated on an ongoing basis. Actual results may differ from these estimates under different assumptions or conditions.



Table of Contents

Accounting policies, as described in detail in the notes to the Company's consolidated financial statements, are an integral part of the Company's consolidated financial statements. A thorough understanding of these accounting policies is essential when reviewing the Company's reported results of operations and financial position. Management believes that the critical accounting policies and estimates listed below require the Company to make difficult, subjective or complex judgments about matters that are inherently uncertain.

- Determination of the allowance for loan and lease losses;
- Valuation of servicing assets;
- Income taxes;
- Restricted stock unit awards with market price conditions;
- Valuation of foreclosed assets;
- Business combinations and goodwill; and
- Unconsolidated joint ventures.

Changes in these estimates that are likely to occur from period to period, or the use of different estimates that the Company could have reasonably used in the current period, would have a material impact on the Company's financial position, results of operations or liquidity.

Non-GAAP Measures

Some of the financial measures included in our selected historical consolidated financial data and elsewhere in this Annual Report are not measures of financial performance recognized by GAAP. These non-GAAP financial measures are: "tangible shareholders' equity;" "tangible assets;" "tangible shareholders' equity to tangible assets;" "tangible book value per share;" "efficiency ratio;" "non-GAAP net income;" "noninterest income, as adjusted;" "provision for loan and lease losses, as adjusted;" "noninterest expense, as adjusted;" and "income tax expense, as adjusted." Management uses these non-GAAP financial measures in its analysis of the Company's performance.

• "Tangible shareholders' equity" is total shareholders' equity less goodwill and other intangible assets. Management has not considered loan servicing rights as an intangible asset for purposes of this calculation.

• "Tangible assets" is total assets less goodwill and other intangible assets. Management has not considered loan servicing rights as an intangible asset for purposes of this calculation.

• "Tangible shareholders' equity to tangible assets" is defined as the ratio of shareholders' equity less goodwill and other intangible assets, divided by total assets less goodwill and other intangible assets. Management believes this measure is important because it shows relative changes from period to period in equity and total assets, each exclusive of changes in intangible assets. Management has not considered loan servicing rights as an intangible asset for purposes of this calculation.

• "Tangible book value per share" is defined as total equity reduced by goodwill and other intangible assets divided by total common shares outstanding. Management believes this measure is important because it shows changes from period to period in book value per share exclusive of changes in intangible assets. Management has not considered loan servicing rights as an intangible asset for purposes of this calculation.

• "Efficiency ratio" is defined as total noninterest expense divided by the sum of net interest income and noninterest income less gain (loss) on sale of securities. Management believes this measure is important as an indicator of productivity because it shows the amount of noninterest expense that was required to generate a dollar of revenue. While the efficiency ratio is a measure of productivity, its value reflects the unique attributes of the "high-touch business model" the Company employs.

Table of Contents

“Non-GAAP net income” is defined as net income adjusted to exclude significant non-routine sources of income and uses of expenses and an estimated corporate income tax expense across all periods being compared. Management believes these measures are important as they allow for an evaluation of the core profitability of the Company's business.

“Noninterest income, as adjusted” is defined as noninterest income adjusted to exclude significant non-routine sources of income, including the gain on contribution to equity method investment and a loss associated with the 2016 renewable energy tax credit investment. Management believes these measures are important as they allow for an evaluation of the core profitability of the Company's business.

“Provision for loan and lease losses, as adjusted” is defined as provision for loan and lease losses adjusted to exclude significant non-routine sources of provision, including provision for loans reclassified from held for sale to held for investment. Management believes these measures are important as they allow for an evaluation of the core profitability of the Company's business.

“Noninterest expense, as adjusted” is defined as noninterest expense adjusted to exclude significant non-routine sources of expenses, including stock based compensation expense of restricted stock awards for key employee retention with an effective date of May 24, 2016, merger costs associated with the Reltco acquisition and Apiture investment, trade-in loss on an aircraft and a contract modification for Reltco. Other non-routine sources of noninterest expense included impairments of: an aircraft held for sale, goodwill and other intangibles and the 2016 renewable energy tax credit investment. Management believes these measures are important as they allow for an evaluation of the core profitability of the Company's business.

“Income tax (benefit) expense, as adjusted” is defined as income tax expense adjusted to exclude significant non-routine sources of expense or income, as discussed above, the impact of revaluing the Company's net deferred tax liability as a result of reduced federal tax rates arising from the December 22, 2017 Tax Act legislation, other renewable energy tax expense and renewable energy tax credits arising from the 2016 investment. Management believes these measures are important as they allow for an evaluation of the core profitability of the Company's business.

The Company believes these non-GAAP financial measures provide useful information to management and investors that is supplementary to the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows computed in accordance with GAAP; however, the Company acknowledges that non-GAAP financial measures have a number of limitations. As such, you should not view these measures as a substitute for results determined in accordance with GAAP, and they are not necessarily comparable to non-GAAP financial measures that other companies use. The following table provides a reconciliation of these non-GAAP financial measures to the most closely related GAAP measure.

Table of Contents

	Years Ended December 31,			
	2017	2016	2015	
Total shareholders' equity	\$436,933	\$222,847	\$199,488	
Less:				
Goodwill	—	—	—	
Other intangible assets	4,264	—	—	
Tangible shareholders' equity (a)	\$432,669	\$222,847	\$199,488	
Shares outstanding (c)	39,895,583	34,253,602	34,172,899	
Total assets	\$2,758,474	\$1,755,261	\$1,052,622	
Less:				
Goodwill	—	—	—	
Other intangible assets	4,264	—	—	
Tangible assets (b)	\$2,754,210	\$1,755,261	\$1,052,622	
Tangible shareholders' equity to tangible assets (a/b)	15.71	% 12.70	% 18.95	%
Tangible book value per share (a/c)	10.85	6.51	5.84	
Efficiency ratio:				
Noninterest expense (d)	\$143,165	\$106,445	\$71,715	
Net interest income	78,034	42,649	25,589	
Noninterest income	172,921	93,539	84,328	
Less: gain (loss) on sale of securities	—	1	13	
Adjusted operating revenue (e)	\$250,955	\$136,187	\$109,904	
Efficiency ratio (d/e)	57.05	% 78.16	% 65.25	%

Table of Contents

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Reconciliation of net income to non-GAAP net income adjusted for non-routine income and expenses:			
Net income attributable to Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.	\$ 100,499	\$ 13,773	\$ 20,625
Gain on sale of investment in non-consolidated affiliate	—	—	(3,782 )
Provision for loans reclassified as held for investment	—	4,023	—
Gain on contribution to equity method investment	(68,000 )	—	—
Stock based compensation expense for restricted stock awards with an effective date of May 24, 2016, as discussed in Note 10 of the Notes to Unaudited Consolidated Financial Statements included in our March 31, 2016 Form 10-Q	1,370	8,973	—
Merger costs associated with Reltco acquisition and Apiture investment	2,874	—	—
Trade-in loss on aircraft	206	—	—
Impairment charge taken on aircraft held for sale	—	1,422	—
Impairment expense on goodwill and other intangibles	3,648	—	—
Contract modification of Reltco	1,600	—	—
Renewable energy tax credit investment income, impairment and loss	690	3,239	—
Income tax effects and adjustments for non-GAAP items*	23,045	(7,062 )	1,513
Deferred tax liability revaluation	(18,921 )	—	—
Other renewable energy tax expense	176	176	—
Renewable energy tax credit	—	(4,396 )	—
Non-GAAP net income	\$ 47,187	\$ 20,148	\$ 18,356
*Estimated at 40.0%			
Earnings per share:			
Basic	\$ 1.29	\$ 0.59	\$ 0.59
Diluted	\$ 1.25	\$ 0.57	\$ 0.57
Weighted-average shares outstanding:			
Basic	36,592,893	34,202,168	31,079,032
Diluted	37,859,535	35,086,959	31,973,146
Reconciliation of financial statement line items as reported to adjusted for non-routine income and expenses:			
Noninterest income, as reported	\$ 172,921	\$ 93,539	\$ 84,328
Gain on sale of investment in non-consolidated affiliate	—	—	(3,782 )
Gain on contribution to equity method investment	(68,000 )	—	—
Renewable energy tax credit investment loss	—	42	—
Noninterest income, as adjusted	104,921	93,581	80,546
Provision for loan and lease losses, as reported	9,536	12,536	3,806
Provision for loans reclassified as held for investment	—	(4,023 )	—
Provision for loan and lease losses, as adjusted	\$ 9,536	\$ 8,513	\$ 3,806

Table of Contents

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Noninterest expense, as reported	\$143,165	\$106,445	\$71,715
Stock based compensation expense	(1,370 )	(8,973 )	—
Merger costs associated with Reltco acquisition and Apiture investment	(2,874 )	—	—
Trade-in loss on aircraft	(206 )	—	—
Impairment charge taken on aircraft held for sale	—	(1,422 )	—
Impairment expense on goodwill and other intangibles	(3,648 )	—	—
Contract modification of Reltco	(1,600 )	—	—
Renewable energy tax credit investment impairment and loss	(690 )	(3,197 )	—
Noninterest expense, as adjusted	132,777	92,853	71,715
Income tax (benefit) expense, as reported	(2,245 )	3,443	13,795
Income tax effects and adjustment for non-routine income and expenses	(23,045 )	7,062	(1,513 )
Deferred tax liability revaluation	18,921	—	—
Other renewable energy tax expense	(176 )	(176 )	—
Renewable energy tax credit	—	4,396	—
Income tax (benefit) expense, as adjusted	\$(6,545 )	\$14,725	\$12,282

Table of Contents

Item 7A. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK

Interest rate risk is a significant market risk and can result from timing and volume differences in the repricing of rate-sensitive assets and liabilities, widening or tightening of credit spreads, changes in the general level of market interest rates and changes in the shape and level of market yield curves. The Company manages the interest rate sensitivity of interest-bearing liabilities and interest-earning assets in an effort to minimize the adverse effects of changes in the interest rate environment. Management of interest rate risk is carried out primarily through strategies involving available-for-sale securities, loan and lease portfolio, and available funding sources.

The Company has a total cumulative gap in interest-earning assets and interest-bearing liabilities of 3.92% as of December 31, 2017, indicating that, overall, assets will reprice before liabilities. The majority of both the Company's loans and leases and deposits have short-term repricing capabilities. The Company has a funding model which differs from that of traditional banks. The majority of the Company's revenue is attributable to non-interest income so the Company is less dependent on net interest income when compared to a traditional bank model. With the Company's non-traditional funding model, the Company does not have the traditional bank branch network and can operate with lower overhead costs to offset the higher cost of funds used to attract deposits.

The Company has an Asset/Liability Committee to communicate, coordinate and control all aspects involving interest rate risk management. The Asset/Liability Committee, which includes five members of our board of directors, establishes and monitors the volume, maturities, pricing and mix of assets and funding sources with the objective of managing assets and funding sources to provide results that are consistent with liquidity, growth, risk limits and profitability goals. Adherence to relevant policies is monitored on an ongoing basis by the Asset/Liability Committee. The matching of assets and liabilities may be analyzed by examining the extent to which such assets and liabilities are "interest rate sensitive." An asset or liability is said to be interest rate sensitive within a specific time period if it will mature or reprice within that time period. The Company analyzes interest rate sensitivity position to manage the risk associated with interest rate movements through the use of two simulation models: economic value of equity, or EVE, and net interest income, or NII, simulations. The EVE simulation provides a long-term view of interest rate risk because it analyzes all of the Bank's future cash flows. EVE is defined as the present value of the Bank's assets, less the present value of its liabilities, adjusted for any off-balance sheet items. The results show a theoretical change in the economic value of shareholders' equity as interest rates change.

EVE and NII simulations are completed quarterly and presented to the Asset/Liability Committee. The simulations provide an estimate of the impact of changes in interest rates on equity and net interest income under a range of assumptions. The numerous assumptions used in the simulation process are reviewed by the Asset/Liability Committee on a quarterly basis. Changes to these assumptions can significantly affect the results of the simulation. The simulation incorporates assumptions regarding the potential timing in the repricing of certain assets and liabilities when market rates change and the changes in spreads between different market rates. The simulation analysis incorporates management's current assessment of the risk that pricing margins will change adversely over time due to competition or other factors.

Simulation analysis is only an estimate of interest rate risk exposure at a particular point in time. The Company continually reviews the potential effect changes in interest rates could have on the repayment of rate sensitive assets and funding requirements of rate sensitive liabilities.

The table below sets forth an approximation of the Company's NII sensitivity exposure for the 12-month periods ending December 31, 2018 and 2019 and the Company's EVE sensitivity at December 31, 2017. The simulation uses projected repricing of assets and liabilities at December 31, 2017 on the basis of contractual maturities, anticipated repayments and scheduled rate adjustments. Prepayment rates can have a significant impact on interest income simulation. Because of the large percentage of variable rate loans and mortgage-backed securities the Company holds, rising or falling interest rates have a significant impact on the prepayment speeds of earning assets that in turn affect the rate sensitivity position. The Company's loan and lease portfolio consists primarily of SBA 7(a) loans, 93.5% variable rate loans adjustable with the prime rate or 3-month LIBOR. The Company's prepayment speeds react differently in a rising rate environment. Generally, when interest rates rise, the Company's prepayments tend to increase; the opposite reaction from typical bank loan and lease portfolios. In a rising rate environment, the Company's



quarterly adjustable borrowers seek to fix their payments so the loans prepay faster as borrowers refinance into fixed rate products with another lender. When interest rates fall, prepayments tend to slow down. The Company's sensitivity would be reduced if prepayments slow and vice versa. While management believes such assumptions to be reasonable, approximate actual future activity may differ from the assumed prepayment rates presented below.

Table of Contents

Basis Point ("bp") Change in Interest Rates	Estimated Increase/Decrease in Net Interest Income		Estimated Percentage Change in EVE
	12 Months Ending December 31, 2018	12 Months Ending December 31, 2019	As of December 31, 2017
+400	22.0%	18.3%	(7.3)%
+300	16.5	13.7	(5.9)
+200	11.0	9.1	(4.4)
+100	5.5	4.6	(2.8)
-100	(6.1)	(4.9)	2.0

Rates are increased instantaneously at the beginning of the projection. The Company is overall slightly asset sensitive, therefore, the large percentage of variable rate loans produce positive net interest income results as rates rise.

Generally banks will experience a decrease in net interest income as rates rise and an increase as rates decline.

Sensitivity will decrease in the second year of the projection due to interest rates increasing or decreasing for the full year and also due to the other assumptions used in the analysis as noted previously but still have a positive impact in a rising rate environment. Interest rates do not normally move all at once or evenly over time, but management believes that the analysis is useful to understanding the potential direction and magnitude of net interest income changes due to changing interest rates.

The EVE analysis shows that the Company would theoretically lose market value in a rising rate environment. The increased fixed rate longer-term wholesale deposits has contributed a higher percentage than the assets to the portfolio mix, resulting in a negative change in market value in a rising rate environment. The favorable EVE change resulting from the loan portfolio in a rising rate analysis is more than offset by the devaluation of the interest-bearing liabilities.

Table of Contents

## Item 8. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND SUPPLEMENTARY DATA

## QUARTERLY FINANCIAL INFORMATION

The following table sets forth, for the periods indicated, certain consolidated quarterly financial information. This information is derived from the Company's unaudited financial statements, which include, in the opinion of management, all normal recurring adjustments which management considers necessary for a fair presentation of the results for such periods. This information should be read in conjunction with the consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this report. The results for any quarter are not necessarily indicative of results for any future period.

## Quarterly Financials

(dollars in thousands, except per share data)

	2017			
	4th Qtr	3rd Qtr	2nd Qtr	1st Qtr
Interest income	\$30,536	\$28,172	\$24,345	\$20,419
Interest expense	7,560	7,147	5,953	4,778
Net interest income	22,976	21,025	18,392	15,641
Provision for loan and lease losses	4,055	2,426	1,556	1,499
Net interest income after provision for loan and lease losses	18,921	18,599	16,836	14,142
Noninterest income	95,441	25,060	26,667	25,753
Noninterest expense	41,024	35,856	33,300	32,985
Income before income taxes	73,338	7,803	10,203	6,910
Income tax expense (benefit)	1,608	(5,059)	408	798
Net income to common shareholders	\$71,730	\$12,862	\$9,795	\$6,112
Net income per share:				
Basic	\$1.80	\$0.34	\$0.28	\$0.18
Diluted	\$1.74	\$0.33	\$0.27	\$0.17

Table of Contents

	2016			
	4th Qtr	3rd Qtr	2nd Qtr	1st Qtr
Interest income	\$16,914	\$15,562	\$13,402	\$11,394
Interest expense	4,522	3,931	3,485	2,685
Net interest income	12,392	11,631	9,917	8,709
Provision for loan and lease losses	3,844	3,806	3,453	1,433
Net interest income after provision for loan and lease losses	8,548	7,825	6,464	7,276
Noninterest income	26,327	25,432	19,348	22,432
Noninterest expense	32,384	27,218	25,132	21,711
Income before income taxes	2,491	6,039	680	7,997
Income tax (benefit) expense	(2,989)	2,561	557	3,314
Net income	5,480	3,478	123	4,683
Net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	—	1	—	8
Net income to common shareholders	\$5,480	\$3,479	\$123	\$4,691
Net income per share:				
Basic	\$0.16	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$0.14
Diluted	\$0.16	\$0.10	\$0.00	\$0.13

Table of Contents

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

Shareholders and the Board of Directors

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Wilmington, North Carolina

Opinion on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. and Subsidiaries (the “Company”) as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, and the related consolidated statements of income, comprehensive income, changes in shareholders’ equity and cash flows for each of the years in the three year period ended December 31, 2017, and the related notes (collectively referred to as the financial statements). In our opinion, the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the consolidated financial position of the Company at December 31, 2017 and 2016, and the consolidated results of their operations and their cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended December 31, 2017, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

Basis for Opinion

These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company’s management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (“PCAOB”) and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal laws and applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audits to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud.

Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks; examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements; evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management; and evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ Dixon Hughes Goodman LLP

We have served as the Company’s auditor since 2010.

Raleigh, North Carolina  
March 8, 2018

Table of ContentsLive Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Consolidated Balance Sheets  
(Dollars in thousands)

	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
Assets		
Cash and due from banks	\$295,271	\$238,008
Certificates of deposit with other banks	3,000	7,250
Investment securities available-for-sale	93,355	71,056
Loans held for sale	680,454	394,278
Loans and leases held for investment	1,343,973	907,566
Allowance for loan and lease losses	(24,190 )	(18,209 )
Net loans and leases	1,319,783	889,357
Premises and equipment, net	178,790	64,661
Foreclosed assets	1,281	1,648
Servicing assets	52,298	51,994
Other assets	134,242	37,009
Total assets	\$2,758,474	\$1,755,261
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity		
Liabilities		
Deposits:		
Noninterest-bearing	\$57,868	\$27,990
Interest-bearing	2,202,395	1,457,086
Total deposits	2,260,263	1,485,076
Long term borrowings	26,564	27,843
Other liabilities	34,714	19,495
Total liabilities	2,321,541	1,532,414
Shareholders' equity		
Preferred stock, no par value, 1,000,000 authorized, none issued or outstanding at December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016	—	—
Class A common stock, no par value, 100,000,000 shares authorized, 35,252,053 and 29,530,072, shares issued and outstanding at December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, respectively	268,557	149,966
Class B common stock, no par value, 10,000,000 shares authorized, 4,723,530 shares issued, 4,643,530 and 4,723,530 shares outstanding at December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, respectively	49,168	50,015
Retained earnings	120,241	23,518
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(1,033 )	(652 )
Total equity	436,933	222,847
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	\$2,758,474	\$1,755,261
See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements		

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Consolidated Statements of Income

(Dollars in thousands, except per share data)

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Interest income			
Loans and fees on loans	\$99,633	\$55,107	\$33,340
Investment securities, taxable	1,432	1,132	811
Other interest earning assets	2,407	1,033	300
Total interest income	103,472	57,272	34,451
Interest expense			
Deposits	24,223	13,659	7,379
Borrowings	1,215	964	1,483
Total interest expense	25,438	14,623	8,862
Net interest income	78,034	42,649	25,589
Provision for loan and lease losses	9,536	12,536	3,806
Net interest income after provision for loan and lease losses	68,498	30,113	21,783
Noninterest income			
Loan servicing revenue	24,588	21,393	16,081
Loan servicing asset revaluation	(13,171 )	(8,391 )	(6,229 )
Net gains on sales of loans	78,590	75,326	67,385
Equity in loss of non-consolidated affiliates	—	—	(26 )
Gain on sale of investment in non-consolidated affiliate	—	—	3,782
Gain on contribution to equity method investment	68,000	—	—
Gain (loss) on sale of investment securities available-for-sale	—	1	13
Construction supervision fee income	1,776	2,667	1,623
Title insurance income	7,565	—	—
Other noninterest income	5,573	2,543	1,699
Total noninterest income	172,921	93,539	84,328
Noninterest expense			
Salaries and employee benefits	74,669	62,996	40,323
Travel expense	8,124	8,205	7,379
Professional services expense	4,937	3,482	2,643
Advertising and marketing expense	6,363	4,534	4,333
Occupancy expense	6,195	4,573	3,475
Data processing expense	8,449	5,299	3,583
Equipment expense	7,479	2,246	2,119
Other loan origination and maintenance expense	4,970	2,825	2,069
Renewable energy tax credit investment impairment	690	3,197	—
FDIC insurance	3,206	1,417	514
Title insurance closing services expense	2,418	—	—
Impairment expense on goodwill and other intangibles	3,648	—	—
Other expense	12,017	7,671	5,277
Total noninterest expense	143,165	106,445	71,715
Income before taxes	98,254	17,207	34,396
Income tax (benefit) expense	(2,245 )	3,443	13,795
Net income	100,499	13,764	20,601
Net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	—	9	24

Edgar Filing: Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. - Form 10-K

Net income attributable to Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.	\$100,499	\$13,773	\$20,625
Basic earnings per share	\$2.75	\$0.40	\$0.66
Diluted earnings per share	\$2.65	\$0.39	\$0.65
See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements			

85

---



Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income

(Dollars in thousands)

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Net income	\$100,499	\$13,764	\$20,601
Other comprehensive loss before tax:			
Net unrealized loss on investment securities arising during the period	(619)	(746)	(437)
Reclassification adjustment for gain on sale of securities available-for-sale included in net income	—	(1)	(13)
Other comprehensive loss before tax	(619)	(747)	(450)
Income tax benefit	238	287	173
Other comprehensive loss, net of tax	(381)	(460)	(277)
Total comprehensive income	\$100,118	\$13,304	\$20,324

See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

86

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Consolidated Statements of Changes in Shareholders' Equity

(Dollars in thousands, except per share data)

	Common stock Shares			Retained earnings (accumulated deficit)	Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)	Non- controlling interest	Total equity
	Class A	Class B	Amount				
Balance at December 31, 2014	23,896,400	4,723,530	\$98,672	\$(6,943)	\$ 85	\$ —	\$91,814
Net income (loss)	—	—	—	20,625	—	(24)	20,601
Other comprehensive loss	—	—	—	—	(277)	—	(277)
Consolidation of investment with non-controlling interest	—	—	—	—	—	35	35
Stock option exercises	52,969	—	239	—	—	—	239
Stock option based compensation expense	—	—	1,277	—	—	—	1,277
Restricted stock expense	—	—	148	—	—	—	148
Capital contribution from non-controlling interest	—	—	—	—	—	22	22
Issuance of common stock in connection with initial public offering, net of issue costs	5,500,000	—	87,171	—	—	—	87,171
Dividends (distributions to shareholders)	—	—	—	(1,542)	—	—	(1,542)
Balance at December 31, 2015	29,449,369	4,723,530	\$187,507	\$12,140	\$(192)	\$ 33	\$199,488
Net income (loss)	—	—	—	13,773	—	(9)	13,764
Other comprehensive loss	—	—	—	—	(460)	—	(460)
Issuance of restricted stock	16,745	—	—	—	—	—	—
Stock option exercises	63,958	—	401	—	—	—	401
Stock option based compensation expense	—	—	2,349	—	—	—	2,349
Restricted stock expense	—	—	9,724	—	—	—	9,724
Acquisition of non-controlling interest	—	—	—	—	—	(24)	(24)
Dividends (distributions to shareholders)	—	—	—	(2,395)	—	—	(2,395)
Balance at December 31, 2016	29,530,072	4,723,530	\$199,981	\$23,518	\$(652)	\$ —	\$222,847
Net income	—	—	—	100,499	—	—	100,499
Other comprehensive loss	—	—	—	—	(381)	—	(381)
Issuance of restricted stock	307,613	—	—	—	—	—	—
Withholding cash issued in lieu of restricted stock issuance	—	—	(4,891)	—	—	—	(4,891)
Employee stock purchase program	22,634	—	445	—	—	—	445
Stock option exercises	109,010	—	1,026	—	—	—	1,026
Stock option based compensation expense	—	—	1,786	—	—	—	1,786
Restricted stock expense	—	—	5,717	—	—	—	5,717

Edgar Filing: Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. - Form 10-K

Stock issued in acquisition of Reltco, Inc.	27,724	—	565	—	—	—	565
Non-voting common stock converted to voting common stock in private sale	80,000	(80,000 )	—	—	—	—	—
Issuance of common stock in connection with secondary offering, net of issue costs	5,175,000	—	113,096	—	—	—	113,096
Dividends (distributions to shareholders)	—	—	—	(3,776 )	—	—	(3,776 )
Balance at December 31, 2017	35,252,053	4,643,530	\$317,725	\$ 120,241	\$ (1,033 )	\$ —	\$436,933
See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements							

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
 Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows  
 (Dollars in thousands)

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Cash flows from operating activities			
Net income	\$ 100,499	\$ 13,764	\$ 20,601
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash used by operating activities:			
Depreciation and amortization	10,279	4,260	3,435
Provision for loan and lease losses	9,536	12,536	3,806
Amortization of premium on securities, net of accretion	460	242	66
Amortization of discount on unguaranteed loans, net	2,848	2,854	3,146
Impairment expense on goodwill and other intangibles	3,648	—	—
Deferred tax expense (benefit)	12,017	(4,288 )	936
Originations of loans held for sale	(1,149,617 )	(1,013,643 )	(1,034,769 )
Proceeds from sales of loans held for sale	883,366	837,830	745,072
Net gains on sale of loans held for sale	(78,590 )	(75,326 )	(67,385 )
Net loss on sale of foreclosed assets	59	18	14
Gain on contribution to equity method investment	(68,000 )	—	—
Net increase in servicing assets	(304 )	(7,764 )	(9,231 )
Gain on sale of securities available-for-sale	—	(1 )	(13 )
Gain on sale of investment in non-consolidated affiliate	—	—	(3,782 )
Net loss on disposal of premises and equipment	215	—	17
Renewable energy tax credit investment impairment	690	3,197	—
Stock option based compensation expense	1,786	2,349	1,277
Restricted stock expense	5,717	9,724	148
Equity in loss of non-consolidated affiliates	—	—	26
Stock based compensation expense excess tax benefits	1,002	—	—
Business combination contingent consideration fair value adjustment	1,950	—	—
Changes in assets and liabilities:			
Other assets	(25,247 )	(8,929 )	(4,201 )
Other liabilities	157	1,227	6,154
Net cash used by operating activities	(287,529 )	(221,950 )	(334,683 )
Cash flows from investing activities			
Purchases of securities available-for-sale	(43,071 )	(37,421 )	(24,927 )
Proceeds from sales, maturities, calls, and principal paydown of securities available-for-sale	19,693	19,139	19,980
Proceeds from sale/collection of foreclosed assets	1,498	1,221	513
Business combination, net of cash acquired	(7,696 )	—	—
Investment in certificates of deposit with other banks	—	(250 )	(250 )
Maturities of certificates of deposit with other banks	4,250	3,250	—
Proceeds from sale of investment in non-consolidated affiliate	—	—	9,896
Net cash acquired in consolidation of equity method investment	—	—	319
Capital contribution from non-controlling interest	—	—	22
Loan and lease originations and principal collections, net	(385,551 )	(295,119 )	84,475
Purchases of premises and equipment, net	(124,139 )	(10,889 )	(30,452 )
Net cash (used) provided by investing activities	(535,016 )	(320,069 )	59,576
See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements			



Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
 Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows (Continued)  
 (Dollars in thousands)

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Cash flows from financing activities			
Net increase in deposits	\$775,187	\$680,288	\$282,708
Proceeds from long term borrowings	16,900	—	12,960
Repayment of long term borrowings	(26,279 )	(532 )	(26,434 )
Proceeds from short term borrowings	23,100	—	—
Repayment of short term borrowings	(15,000 )	—	(6,100 )
Stock option exercises	1,026	401	239
Employee stock purchase program	445	—	—
Withholding cash issued in lieu of restricted stock	(4,891 )	—	—
Sale of common stock, net of issuance costs	113,096	—	87,171
Shareholder dividend distributions	(3,776 )	(2,737 )	(2,732 )
Net cash provided by financing activities	879,808	677,420	347,812
Net increase in cash and cash equivalents	57,263	135,401	72,705
Cash and cash equivalents, beginning	238,008	102,607	29,902
Cash and cash equivalents, ending	\$295,271	\$238,008	\$102,607
Supplemental disclosure of cash flow information			
Interest paid	\$25,390	\$14,516	\$8,840
Income tax	7,084	8,238	12,326
Supplemental disclosures of noncash operating, investing, and financing activities			
Unrealized holding losses on available-for-sale securities, net of taxes	\$(381 )	\$(460 )	\$(277 )
Transfers from loans to foreclosed real estate and other repossessions	1,406	406	2,616
Transfers from foreclosed real estate to SBA receivable	216	185	507
Transfers of loans accounted for as secured borrowing collateral to other assets	—	—	4,575
Transfer from fixed assets to other assets held for sale	—	4,621	—
Dividends declared but not paid	—	—	342
Transfer of loans held for sale to loans held for investment	63,643	339,567	9,033
Transfer of loans held for investment to loans held for sale	19,534	2,296	3,243
Contingent consideration in acquisition of controlling interest in equity method investment	—	24	170
Transfers from short term borrowings to long term borrowings	8,100	—	—
Business combination:			
Assets acquired (excluding goodwill)	5,766	—	—
Liabilities assumed	4,681	—	—
Purchase price	8,363	—	—
Goodwill recorded	7,278	—	—
See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements			

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 1. Organization and Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Organization

Live Oak Banking Company (the “Bank”) was organized and incorporated under the laws of the State of North Carolina on February 25, 2008 and commenced operations on May 12, 2008. In December 2008, Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. (the “Company”) was formed and in the first quarter of 2009 acquired all the outstanding shares of Live Oak Banking Company. The Bank is headquartered in the city of Wilmington, North Carolina and has five satellite sales offices across the United States. The Bank specializes in providing lending and deposit related services to small businesses nationwide in targeted industries, which are referred to as verticals. The Bank identifies and grows within credit-worthy industries through expertise within those industries. A significant portion of the loans originated by the Bank are guaranteed by the Small Business Administration (“SBA”) under the 7(a) Loan Program and to a lesser extent by the U.S. Department of Agriculture (“USDA”) Rural Energy for America Program (“REAP”) and Business & Industry (“B&I”) loan programs. The guaranteed portion of the loan is generally available for sale in the secondary market. From time to time the Bank also engages in the sale of participating interests of the unguaranteed portion. As a state chartered bank, the Bank is subject to regulation by the North Carolina Commissioner of Banks and the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation. On July 23, 2015 the Company closed on its initial public offering with a secondary offering completed in August of 2017.

In 2010, the Bank formed Live Oak Number One, Inc. to hold properties foreclosed on by the Bank. Live Oak Number One is a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Bank.

In January 2012, the Company formed nCino, LLC (“nCino”) to further develop and sell cloud-based banking software that was built off of the Force.com platform and transformed into a bank operating system used to streamline the lending process of financial institutions. In 2012 nCino was a majority-owned subsidiary of the Company. In 2013 the Company’s ownership changed such that nCino became a minority-owned subsidiary of the Company. In December 2013 the legal structure of nCino converted from an LLC to a corporation. At year-end 2013, the Company owned 45.94% of nCino. In June of 2014 the Company divested its ownership in nCino to shareholders in the form of a dividend with a subsequent investment of \$6.1 million later in 2014. At December 31, 2014, the Company owned 9.02% of nCino. During 2015, the Company sold its remaining investment in nCino resulting in no ownership as of December 31, 2015.

In September 2013, the Company acquired Government Loan Solutions (“GLS”) as a wholly-owned subsidiary. GLS is a management and technology consulting firm that advises and offers solutions and services to participants in the government guaranteed lending sector. GLS, which was founded in 2006, primarily provides services in connection with the settlement, accounting, and securitization processes for government guaranteed loans, including loans originated under the SBA 7(a) loan programs and USDA guaranteed loans.

In December 2013, the Company jointly formed 504 Fund Advisors, LLC (“504FA”) with Pennant Management, Inc. (“Pennant Management”). As of December 31, 2014, 504FA was a 50% owned investment established for the purpose of underwriting and managing SBA 504 loans held by The 504 Fund (“the Fund”), formerly known as the Pennant 504 Fund. Two of the three portfolio managers of the Fund were employees of GLS. The third employee was an outside owner/manager of 504FA until April 30, 2015. The Company’s wholly owned subsidiaries, the Bank and GLS, provided various advisory and human resource services to 504FA, for which both were reimbursed. The services provided to 504FA did not result in either the Bank or GLS having the ability to directly influence management operations or decisions that directly impact the financial standing of the Company or its subsidiaries. Accordingly, the Company’s investment in 504FA was accounted for under the equity method at December 31, 2014, with a carrying amount of \$231 thousand. The Company acquired control over 504FA on February 2, 2015 by increasing its ownership from 50.0% to 91.3%. The acquisition of an additional 41.3% of ownership occurred in exchange for contingent consideration estimated to total \$170 thousand. Transactions in the third quarter of 2015 increased the

Company's ownership to 92.4% at December 31, 2015. With 7.6% of ownership remaining with a third party investor, amounts of earnings and equity in 504FA attributable to the third party investor were disclosed in the Company's consolidated financial statements as related to a noncontrolling interest. During the first quarter of 2016, the Company increased ownership to 92.9%. On September 1, 2016, the Company acquired the remaining 7.1% ownership from a third party investor in exchange for contingent consideration estimated to total \$24 thousand. The Company's cumulative investment in 504FA was \$1.4 million at December 31, 2017 and 2016.

In September 2015, the Company formed Live Oak Grove, LLC ("Grove"), a wholly-owned subsidiary, for the purpose of providing Company employees and business visitors an on-site restaurant location.



Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

In August 2016, the Company formed Canapi, Inc. (“Canapi”) for the purpose of investing in businesses that align with the Company's strategic initiative to be a leader in financial technology. Canapi was formerly known as Live Oak Ventures, Inc.

In November 2016, the Company formed Live Oak Clean Energy Financing LLC for the purpose of providing financing to entities for renewable energy applications.

On February 1, 2017, the Company completed its acquisition of Reltco Inc. and National Assurance Title, Inc. (collectively referred to as “Reltco”), two nationwide title agencies under common control based in Tampa, Florida. See Note 2. Title Insurance Business for a further discussion of this transaction.

Basis of Presentation

Dollar amounts in all tables in the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements have been presented in thousands, except percentage, time period, stock option, share and per share data. The accounting and reporting policies of the Company and the Bank follow United States generally accepted accounting principles and general practices within the financial services industry. The following is a description of the significant accounting and reporting policies the Company follows in preparing and presenting its consolidated financial statements.

Consolidation Policy

The consolidated financial statements include the financial statements of the Company and wholly-owned subsidiaries of Live Oak Banking Company, Live Oak Number One, GLS, 504FA, Grove, Canapi, Live Oak Clean Energy Financing and Reltco. All significant intercompany balances and transactions have been eliminated in consolidation. In addition, the Company evaluates its relationships with other entities to identify whether they are variable interest entities and to assess whether it is the primary beneficiary of such entities. If the determination is made that the Company is the primary beneficiary, then that entity is included in the consolidated financial statements. If an entity is not a variable interest entity, the Company also evaluates arrangements in which there is a general partner or managing member to determine whether consolidation is appropriate.

Unconsolidated investments where we have the ability to exercise significant influence over the operating and financial policies of the respective investee are accounted for using the equity method of accounting; those that are not consolidated or accounted for using the equity method of accounting are accounted for under cost or fair value accounting. For these investments accounted for under the equity method, the Company records its investment in non-consolidated affiliates and the portion of income or loss in equity in income of non-consolidated affiliates. The Company periodically evaluates these investments for impairment.

On January 28, 2013, the Company's ownership in nCino declined by 21.54%, from 64.36% to 42.82%. This decrease in ownership and related influence occurred as a result of nCino selling additional equity to outside investors for \$7.5 million. As a result, the Company deconsolidated nCino, accounting for its remaining 42.82% investment using the equity method. As previously indicated, the Company divested its remaining ownership in nCino via a dividend to shareholders in June 2014. In August 2014 the Company again invested \$6.1 million in nCino for 9.02% ownership. Due to the decreased level of influence, the Company's investment in nCino at December 31, 2014 was accounted for as a cost method investment. During 2015, the Company sold its remaining investment in nCino resulting in no ownership as of December 31, 2015, 2016 and 2017.

The Company expects to continue to be one of nCino's customers; however, the power to direct nCino's activities is now controlled by outside investors.

Variable Interest Entities

Variable interests are defined as contractual ownership or other interests in an entity that change with fluctuations in an entity's net asset value. The primary beneficiary consolidates the variable interest entity (“VIE”). The primary beneficiary is defined as the enterprise that has both the power to direct the activities of the VIE that most significantly impact the entity's economic performance and the obligation to absorb losses or the right to receive benefits that could be significant to the VIE.

The Company has a limited interest in a partnership that owns and operates a solar renewable energy project which is accounted for as an equity method investment. Over the course of the investment, the Company will receive federal and state tax credits, tax-related benefits, and excess cash available for distribution, if any. The Company may be called to sell its interest in the limited partnerships through a call option once all investment tax credits have been recognized.

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

This entity meets the criteria of a VIE; however, the Company is not the primary beneficiary of the entities, as the general partner has both the power to direct the activities that most significantly impact the economic performance of the entities and the obligation to absorb losses or the right to receive benefits that could be significant to the entity. While the partnership agreement allows the Company to remove the general partner, this right is not deemed to be substantive as the general partner can only be removed for cause.

The Company's investments in the unconsolidated VIE is carried in other assets on the consolidated balance sheet and the Company's unfunded capital and other commitments related to the unconsolidated VIE is carried in other liabilities on the consolidated balance sheet.

The Company's maximum exposure to loss from this unconsolidated VIE includes the investment recorded on the Company's consolidated balance sheet, net of unfunded capital commitments and any impairment recognized, and previously recorded tax credits which remain subject to recapture by taxing authorities based on compliance features required to be met at the project level. While the Company believes the potential for losses from this investment is remote, the maximum exposure was determined by assuming a scenario where related tax credits were recaptured. The following table provides a summary of the tax advantaged VIE that the Company has not consolidated as of December 31, 2017 and 2016:

	2017	2016
Investment carrying amount	\$ 705	\$ 1,394
Unfunded capital	—	690
Maximum exposure to loss	4,221	5,100

**Business Combinations**

Business combinations are accounted for by applying the acquisition method in accordance with Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 805, Business Combinations. Under the acquisition method, identifiable assets acquired and liabilities assumed, and any non-controlling interest in the acquiree at the acquisition date are measured at their fair values as of that date, and are recognized separately from goodwill. Results of operations of the acquired entities are included in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income from the date of acquisition. Any measurement-period adjustments are recorded in the period the adjustment is identified.

**Business Segments**

Operating segments are components of an enterprise about which separate financial information is available that is evaluated regularly by the chief operating decision maker in deciding how to allocate resources and in assessing performance. Management has determined that the Company has one significant operating segment, which is providing a lending platform for small businesses nationwide. In determining the appropriateness of segment definition, the Company considers the materiality of a potential segment, the components of the business about which financial information is available, and components for which management regularly evaluates relative to resource allocation and performance assessment.

**Initial and Secondary Public Offerings**

The Company qualifies as an "emerging growth company" as defined by the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act (JOBS Act). In April of 2015 the Company filed a Registration Statement on Form S-1 with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). This Registration Statement was declared effective by the SEC on July 22, 2015. In reliance on that Registration Statement, the Company issued 5,500,000 shares of voting common stock, no par value, at \$17.00 per share, in exchange for total proceeds of \$87.2 million, net of issue costs.

In August of 2017, the Company completed a secondary offering by issuing 5,175,000 shares of voting common stock, no par value, at \$23.00 per share, in exchange for total proceeds of \$113.1 million, net of issuance costs. The secondary offering was made pursuant to a prospectus supplement dated August 8, 2017 and an accompanying prospectus dated July 28, 2017, pursuant to the Company's shelf registration statement on Form S-3 that was filed with

the Securities and Exchange Commission and became effective on July 28, 2017.

92

---

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Use of Estimates

In preparing financial statements in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (“GAAP”), management is required to make estimates and assumptions that affect reported amounts of assets and liabilities as of the date of the balance sheet and reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. Actual results could differ from those estimates. Material estimates that are particularly susceptible to significant change in the near term relate to the determination of the allowance for loan and lease losses, valuations of servicing assets and income taxes. In addition, the gain on contribution to equity method investment of \$68.0 million was based on management's estimates, including projected cash flows of the entity, and is inherently subjective by its nature.

Cash and Cash Equivalents

For the purpose of presentation in the statement of cash flows, cash and cash equivalents are defined as those amounts included in the balance sheet caption “cash and due from banks.” Cash and cash equivalents have initial maturity of three months or less.

To comply with banking regulations, the Company is required to maintain certain average cash reserve balances. The daily average cash reserve requirement was approximately \$6.6 million and \$1.3 million for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Certificates of Deposit with other Banks

Certificates of deposit with other banks have maturities ranging from March 2018 through December 2018 and bear interest at rates ranging from 0.15% to 1.90%. None of the certificates of deposit had maturities of 12 months or less at the time of origination. All investments in certificates of deposit are with FDIC insured financial institutions and none exceed the maximum insurable amount of \$250 thousand.

Investments

Securities

Certain debt securities that management has the positive intent and ability to hold to maturity are classified as “held-to-maturity” and recorded at amortized cost. Trading securities are recorded at fair value with changes in fair value included in earnings. Securities not classified as held-to-maturity or trading, are classified as “available-for-sale” and recorded at fair value. Unrealized gains and losses for available-for-sale investment securities are excluded from earnings and reported in other comprehensive income. The Company’s entire portfolio for the periods presented is available-for-sale.

Purchase premiums and discounts are recognized in interest income using the interest method over the terms of the securities.

Other

The Company accounts for other investments either under the equity or cost method. Investments through which there is significant influence but not control over the investee are accounted for under the equity method. Investments through which the Company is not able to exercise significant influence over the investee are accounted for under the cost method. Other investments are generally non-marketable equity investments and are included in the other assets line on the consolidated balance sheet.

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Impairment

At each reporting date, the Company evaluates each investment in a loss position for other than temporary impairment ("OTTI"). The Company evaluates declines in market value below cost for debt securities by assessing the likelihood of selling the security prior to recovering its cost basis. If the Company intends to sell the debt security or it is more-likely-than-not that the Company will be required to sell the debt security prior to recovering its cost basis, the Company will write down the security to fair value with the full charge recorded in earnings. If the Company does not intend to sell the debt security and it is not more-likely-than-not that the Company will be required to sell the debt security prior to recovery, the security will not be considered other-than-temporarily impaired unless there are credit losses associated with the security. In that case: (1) where credit losses exist, the portion of the impairment related to those credit losses should be recognized in earnings; (2) any remaining difference between the fair value and the cost basis should be recognized as part of other comprehensive income. For equity securities, any OTTI is recognized with the full charge recorded in earnings. To determine whether an impairment of equity securities is OTTI, the Company considers whether it has the ability and intent to hold the investment until there is a market price recovery and considers whether evidence indicating the cost of the investment is recoverable outweighs evidence to the contrary. In determining whether OTTI exists, management considers many factors, including (1) the length of time and the extent to which the fair value has been less than cost, (2) the financial condition and near-term prospects of the issuer, and (3) the intent and ability of the Company to retain its investment in the issuer for a period of time sufficient to allow for any anticipated recovery in fair value. Gains and losses on the sales of securities are recorded on the trade date and are determined using the specific identification method.

Loans Held For Sale

Management designates loans as held for sale ("HFS") based on its intent to sell guaranteed portions in the SBA and USDA Secondary Market and unguaranteed portions to participant banks and credit unions. Salability requirements of the guaranteed portion include, but are not limited to, full disbursement of the loan commitment amount. Loans originated and intended for sale are carried at the lower of cost or estimated fair value on a loan-by-loan basis. The cost basis of loans held for sale includes the deferral of loan origination fees and costs. Deferred fees and costs are accreted and amortized for loans classified held for sale until the sale occurs. At loan settlement, the pro-rata portion, based on the percent of the total loan sold, of the remaining deferred fees and costs are recognized as an adjustment to the gain on sale.

As part of our management of the loans held in our portfolio, we will occasionally transfer loans from held for investment to held for sale. Upon transfer, any associated allowance for loan and lease loss is released and the carrying value of the loans is adjusted to the estimated fair value. The loans are subsequently accounted for at the lower of cost or fair value, with valuation changes recorded in other noninterest income. Gains or losses on the sale of these loans are also recorded in noninterest income. In certain circumstances, loans designated as held for sale may later be transferred back to the loan and lease portfolio based upon our intent and ability to hold the loans for the foreseeable future. The Company transfers these loans to loans and leases held for investment at the lower of cost or fair value and establishes a related allowance for loan and lease loss.

In accordance with SBA regulation, the Bank is required to retain 10% of the principal balance of any SBA 7(a) loan comprised of unguaranteed dollars. With written consent from the SBA, the Bank may sell down to a 5% exposure comprised of unguaranteed dollars. During 2012, the SBA approved the Bank to sell to the 5% retention level participating interests of the unguaranteed portion of loans originated on or before June 30, 2012 that had been fully funded for a period of eighteen months. This approval expired on June 30, 2014.

Historically, loans held for sale consisted only of guaranteed loan balances and the unguaranteed portion up to the SBA retention minimums discussed above. A negative change in the credit quality of a loan resulted in the loan classification changing from held for sale to held for investment. Beginning in June 2016, loans held for sale consist of guaranteed loan balances. The gain on sale recognized in income is the sum of the premium on the guaranteed loan

and the fair value of the servicing assets recognized, less the discount recorded on the unguaranteed portion of the loan retained.

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

The following summarizes the activity pertaining to loans held for sale for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016:

	2017	2016
Balance at beginning of year	\$394,278	\$480,619
Originations	1,149,617	1,013,643
Proceeds from sale	(883,366 )	(837,830 )
Gain on sale of loans	78,590	75,326
Principal collections, net of deferred fees and costs	(14,556 )	(209 )
Non-cash transfers, net	(44,109 )	(337,271 )
Balance at end of period	\$680,454	\$394,278

**Loans and Leases Held for Investment**

Loans and leases receivable that management has the intent and ability to hold for the foreseeable future or until maturity or pay-off are classified as held for investment ("HFI") and reported at their outstanding principal amount adjusted for any charge-offs, the allowance for loan and lease losses, and any deferred fees or costs on originated loans and leases and unamortized premium or discount on purchased loans. Loan origination fees, net of certain direct origination costs, are deferred and recognized as an adjustment of the related loan yield using the interest method. Discounts and premiums on any purchased loans are amortized to income using the interest method over the remaining period to contractual maturity, adjusted for anticipated prepayments. Historically, loans and leases designated as held for investment, included loans and leases identified as more beneficial to hold for the long term as well as the required retention amount defined by the SBA comprised of unguaranteed dollars and loans and leases designated as troubled debt restructurings, nonaccrual, and risk grade at a 5 or worse as defined by internal risk rating metrics. Beginning June 2016, loans and leases held for investment consist of unguaranteed loan and lease balances and guaranteed and unguaranteed loans and leases designated as troubled debt restructurings, nonaccrual, non-marketable, and risk grade 5 or worse.

During the second quarter of 2016, the Bank transferred \$318.8 million in unguaranteed loans from the HFS category to the HFI category to better reflect intentions of the Company.

Interest income on loans and leases is recognized as earned on a daily accrual basis. The accrual of interest on loans and leases is discontinued when principal or interest is past due 90 days or the loan or lease is determined to be impaired. Impaired loans and leases, or portions thereof, are charged off when deemed uncollectible.

**Equipment Leasing**

The Company purchases new equipment for the purpose of leasing such equipment to customers within its verticals. Equipment purchased to fulfill commitments to commercial renewable energy projects is leased out under operating leases while leases of equipment outside of the renewable energy vertical are generally direct financing leases.

Accordingly, leased assets under operating leases are included in premises and equipment while leased assets under direct financing leases are included in loans and leases held for investment.

**Direct Financing Leases**

Interest income on direct financing leases is recognized when earned. Unearned interest is recognized over the lease term on a basis which results in a constant rate of return on the unrecovered lease investment. The term of each lease is generally 4-6 years which is consistent with the useful life of the equipment with no residual value. As of December 31, 2017, the Company had net investments in direct financing lease receivables of \$2.0 million.

**Operating Leases**

The term of each operating lease is generally 10 to 15 years. The Company retains ownership of the equipment and associated tax benefits such as investment tax credits and accelerated depreciation. At the end of the lease term, the lessee has the option to renew the lease for two additional terms or purchase the equipment at the then current fair market value.





Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Rental revenue from operating leases is recognized on a straight-line basis over the term of the lease. Rental equipment is recorded at cost and depreciated to an estimated residual value on a straight-line basis over the estimated useful life. The useful lives generally range from 20 to 25 years and residual values generally range from 20% to 40%, however, they are subject to periodic evaluation. Changes in useful lives or residual values will impact depreciation expense and any gain or loss from the sale of used equipment. The estimated useful lives and residual values of the Company's leasing equipment are based on industry disposal experience and the Company's expectations for future sale prices.

If the Company decides to sell or otherwise dispose of rental equipment, it is carried at the lower of cost or fair value less costs to sell or dispose. Repair and maintenance costs that do not extend the lives of the rental equipment are charged to direct operating expenses at the time the costs are incurred.

As of December 31, 2017, the Company had a net investment of \$88.4 million in assets included in premises and equipment that are subject to operating leases.

A maturity analysis of future minimum lease payments under non-cancelable operating leases is as follows:

As of December 31, 2017	Amount
2018	\$5,162
2019	5,408
2020	5,428
2021	5,455
2022	5,458
Thereafter	34,046
Total	\$60,957

## Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses

The allowance for loan and lease losses is established as losses are estimated to have occurred through a provision for loan and lease losses charged to earnings. Loan or lease losses are charged against the allowance when management believes the un-collectibility of a loan or lease balance is confirmed. Subsequent recoveries, if any, are credited to the allowance.

The allowance for loan and lease losses is evaluated on a regular basis by management and is based upon management's periodic review of the collectibility of the loans or leases in light of historical experience, the nature and volume of the loan and lease portfolio, adverse situations that may affect the borrower's ability to repay, estimated value of any underlying collateral and prevailing economic conditions. This evaluation is inherently subjective as it requires estimates that are susceptible to significant revision as more information becomes available.

A loan or lease is considered impaired when, based on current information and events, it is probable that the Company will be unable to collect the scheduled payments of principal or interest when due according to the contractual terms of the loan or lease agreement. Factors considered by management in determining impairment include payment status and other circumstances impacting the probability of collecting scheduled principal and interest payments when due. Management determines the significance of payment delays and payment shortfalls on a case-by-case basis, taking into consideration all of the circumstances surrounding the loan or lease and the borrower, including the length of the delay, the reasons for the delay, the borrower's prior payment record, and the amount of the shortfall in relation to the principal and interest owed. Impairment is measured on a credit-by-credit basis by either the present value of expected future cash flows discounted at the loan or lease's effective interest rate, the loan or lease's obtainable market price, or the fair value of the collateral if the loan or lease is collateral dependent, except for large groups of smaller balance homogeneous loans or leases which are collectively evaluated for impairment. Smaller balance loan or lease relationships collectively evaluated for impairment are generally comprised of credits with unguaranteed exposure of less than \$100,000 using a methodology based on historical specific reserves on similar sized loans or leases. Loans or leases classified as troubled debt restructured ("TDR") are considered impaired. Loans or leases that experience

insignificant payment delays and payment shortfalls generally are not classified as impaired.

96

---

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

A loan or lease is accounted for as a TDR if the Company, for reasons related to the borrower's financial difficulties, restructures a loan or lease, and grants a concession to the borrower that it would not otherwise grant. A TDR typically involves a modification of terms such as a reduction of the interest rate below the current market rate for a loan or lease with similar risk characteristics or the waiving of certain financial covenants without corresponding offsetting compensation or additional support. The Company measures the impairment loss of a TDR using the methodology for individually impaired loans or leases.

Interest is accrued and credited to income based on the principal amount outstanding. The accrual of interest on impaired loans or leases is discontinued when, in management's opinion, the borrower may be unable to meet payments as they become due or when the loan or lease becomes ninety days past due. Past due status of loans and leases is determined based on contractual terms. When interest accrual is discontinued, all unpaid accrued interest for the current year is reversed. Interest income is subsequently recognized on the cash-basis or cost-recovery method, as appropriate. Cash payments of interest on nonaccrual loans or leases will be applied to the principal balance of the loan or lease. When facts and circumstances indicate the borrower has regained the ability to meet the required payments, the loan or lease is returned to accrual status. Interest accruals are resumed on nonaccrual loans or leases only when it is brought current with respect to interest and principal and when, in the judgment of management, the loans or leases are estimated to be fully collectible as to all principal and interest. Management's judgment is based on an assessment of the borrower's financial condition and a recent history of payment performance.

The Company identifies all impaired loans and leases, including those individually and collectively evaluated for impairment, for impairment disclosures.

Upon transfer from held for sale classification, loans and leases held for investment become subject to the allowance for loan and lease loss review process. As a result of this process, the above mentioned \$318.8 million loan reclassification resulted in a \$4.0 million increase in the provision for loan and lease losses during the second quarter of 2016.

During the second quarter of 2016, the Company also implemented enhancements to the methodology for estimating the allowance for loan and lease losses, including refinements to the measurement of qualitative factors in the estimation process. Management believes these enhancements will improve the precision of the process for estimating the allowance, but did not fundamentally change the Company's approach. These revisions resulted in a \$390 thousand reduction in the provision for loan and lease losses during the second quarter of 2016.

Foreclosed Assets

Real estate properties acquired through, or in lieu of, loan foreclosure are to be sold and are initially recorded at the lower of carrying amount or fair value less anticipated cost to sell at the date of foreclosure, establishing a new cost basis. Any write down at the time of transfer to foreclosed assets is charged to the allowance for loan and lease losses. After foreclosure, valuations are periodically performed by management, and the real estate is carried at the lower of carrying amount or fair value, less cost to sell. Subsequent write downs are charged to other loan origination and maintenance expense. Costs relating to improvement of the property are capitalized while holding costs of the property are charged to other loan origination and maintenance expense in the period incurred.

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

**Premises and Equipment**

All premises and equipment, excluding land, are carried at cost, less accumulated depreciation. Land is carried at cost. Additions and major replacements or improvements which extend useful lives of property or equipment are capitalized. Maintenance, repairs, and minor improvements are expensed as incurred. Upon retirement or other disposition of the assets, the cost and related depreciation are removed and any resulting gain or loss is reflected in income. Leasehold improvements are amortized over the terms of the respective leases or the estimated useful lives of the improvements, whichever is shorter. Depreciation is computed by the straight-line method over the following estimated useful lives:

	Years
Buildings	39
Transportation	5-10
Land Improvements	7-15
Furniture and equipment	5-10
Computers and software	3-5

**Servicing Assets**

All sales of loans are executed on a servicing retained basis. The standard SBA loan sale agreement is structured to provide the Company with a “servicing spread” paid from a portion of the interest cash flow of the loan. SBA regulations require the Bank to retain a portion of the cash flow from the interest payments received for a sold loan. The SBA retention requirement is at least 100 basis points in servicing spread while the Company's standard USDA loan sale agreement specifies a servicing spread of 40 basis points. The portion of the servicing spread that exceeds adequate compensation for the servicing function is recognized as a servicing asset. Industry practice recognizes adequate compensation for servicing SBA and USDA loans as 40 basis points. The fair value of the servicing asset is measured at the discounted present value of the excess servicing spread over the expected life of the related loan using appropriate discount rates and assumptions based on industry statistics for prepayment speeds.

Servicing assets are recognized as separate assets when rights are acquired through purchase or through sale of financial assets and are carried at fair value. Generally, purchased servicing rights are capitalized at the cost to acquire the rights. For sales of loans, a portion of the cost of originating the loan is allocated to the servicing right based on fair value. Fair value is based on market prices for comparable servicing contracts, when available, or alternatively, is based on a valuation model that calculates the present value of estimated future net servicing income. The valuation model incorporates assumptions that market participants would use in estimating future net servicing income, such as adequate compensation for servicing, the discount rate, the custodial earnings rate, an inflation rate, ancillary income, prepayment speeds and default rates and losses. Capitalized servicing rights are carried at fair value as of the reporting date. Changes to fair value are reported in loan servicing asset revaluation.

Servicing fee income is recorded for fees earned for servicing loans. The fees are based on a contractual percentage of the outstanding principal or a fixed amount per loan and are recorded as income when earned.

The Company's investment in a loan is allocated between the retained portion of the loan, the servicing asset, and the sold portion of the loan on the date the loan is sold.

When only a portion of a loan is sold, GAAP requires the Company to reallocate the carrying basis between the portion of the loan sold and the portion of the loan retained based on the relative fair value of the respective portions as of the date of sale. The maximum gain on sale that can be recognized is the difference between the fair value of the guaranteed portion sold and the reallocated basis of the portion of the loan sold. The Company measures the fair value of the guaranteed portion of the loan by the cash premium at which the sale was consummated. The limitation on the maximum gain allowed to be recognized results in a discount recorded on the unguaranteed dollars retained. The carrying value of the retained portion of the loan is discounted based in part on the estimates derived from the Company's comparable nonguaranteed loan sales.



Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

## Derivative Financial Instruments

During the fourth quarter of 2016, the Company began using exchange-traded interest rate futures contracts to manage interest rate risk that may impact expected gains arising from future secondary market loan sales. Upon entering into a futures contract, the Company is required to pledge to the counterparty an amount of cash equal to a certain percentage of the contract amount, also known as an initial margin deposit. Subsequent payments, known as variation margin, are made or received by the Company each day to settle the daily fluctuations in the fair value of the underlying contract. Investments in these derivative contracts are subject to risks that can result in a loss of all or part of an investment. Credit risk is considered low because the counterparties are futures exchanges. The Company has not designated any derivative as a hedging instrument under applicable accounting guidance. Changes in fair value of the derivative contracts is recorded as a component of "net gains on sales of loans" on the consolidated statement of income. The Company recognized a loss of \$117 thousand and a gain of \$31 thousand on the derivative contracts for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. The total notional amount of derivative contracts outstanding was \$29.9 million and \$8.0 million as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. The fair value of the derivative contracts on the balance sheet date is zero due to the daily cash settlement of contracts.

## Goodwill and Intangible Assets

Goodwill is the purchase premium after adjusting for the fair value of net assets acquired. Goodwill is not amortized but is reviewed for potential impairment on an annual basis, or when events or circumstances indicate a potential impairment, at the related reporting unit level. The goodwill impairment test involves comparing the fair value of the reporting unit with its carrying value, including goodwill. If the fair value of the reporting unit exceeds its carrying value, goodwill of the reporting unit is considered not impaired; however, if the carrying value of the reporting unit exceeds its fair value, an impairment charge must be recorded. An impairment loss recognized cannot exceed the amount of goodwill assigned to a reporting unit. An impairment loss establishes a new basis in the goodwill and subsequent reversals of goodwill impairment losses are not permitted under applicable accounting guidance.

For intangible assets subject to amortization, the recoverability test is performed when a triggering event occurs and an impairment loss is recognized if the carrying value of the intangible asset is not recoverable and exceeds fair value. The carrying value of the intangible asset is considered not recoverable if it exceeds the sum of the undiscounted cash flows expected to result from the use of the asset. Intangible assets deemed to have indefinite useful lives are not subject to amortization. An impairment loss is recognized if the carrying value of the intangible asset with an indefinite life exceeds its fair value.

Intangibles subject to amortization related to the Reltco acquisition include non-compete agreements with former employees amortized over five years and customer relationships amortized over eight years. The Reltco trade name had a carrying amount of \$480 thousand as of December 31, 2017, and is the only indefinite-lived intangible asset. The following table shows carrying amounts and accumulated amortization of all intangible assets as of December 31, 2017. There were no intangible assets related to Reltco as of December 31, 2016.

Amortizable intangible assets as of December 31, 2017:

	Carrying Amount	Accumulated Amortization
Non-compete agreements	\$ 405	\$ (74 )
Customer relationships	3,900	(447 )
Total	\$ 4,305	\$ (521 )

The Company's projected amortization expense for the years ending December 31, 2018, 2019, 2020 and 2021 is \$569 thousand per year. Projected amortization expense for the year ended December 31, 2022 is \$494 thousand.





Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

As of October 31, 2017, it was determined that impairment existed at the Reltco reporting unit and impairment charges of \$3.6 million were recorded. These impairment charges for the year ended December 31, 2017 are reflected in a separate line in the income statement and are comprised of the following components:

Intangible assets	\$720
Goodwill	7,278
Contingent consideration liability	(4,350 )
Total impairment expense on goodwill and other intangibles	\$3,648

See Note 2. Title Insurance Business for further discussion related to impairment of Reltco.

Long-Lived Assets

The Company evaluates the carrying value of rental equipment and identifiable definite lived intangible assets for impairment whenever events or circumstances have occurred that would indicate the carrying amount may not be fully recoverable. A key element in determining the recoverability of long-lived assets is the Company's outlook as to the future market conditions for its rental equipment. If the carrying amount is not fully recoverable, an impairment loss is recognized to reduce the carrying amount to fair value. The Company determines fair value based upon the condition of the rental equipment and the projected net cash flows from its rental and sale considering current market conditions. During the year ended December 31, 2017, there were no impairments of long-lived assets.

Impairment of Long -Lived Asset Reclassified to Held for Sale

During the fourth quarter of 2016, the Company determined that retention of one of its aircraft was ineffective in serving the needs of an expanding nationwide customer base. As a result of this determination, the Company began marketing the aircraft for sale. Subsequently in December 2016, the Company entered into a sale agreement with a third party with expected total proceeds, net of expenses, of \$3.2 million. An impairment expense of \$1.4 million was recorded and included in the "Other expense" line item in the 2016 consolidated statements of income upon adjusting the carrying amount to the expected fair value. The expected fair value of the aircraft of \$3.2 million is reflected in the consolidated 2016 balance sheet in the "Other assets" line item. The sale of this aircraft took place in January 2017 with no additional loss.

Change in Accounting Estimate

During 2017, the Company assessed its estimate of the useful lives of the Company's aircraft transportation. The Company revised its original useful life estimate of 20 years and currently estimates that its aircraft transportation will have a useful life of 10 years. The effects of reflecting this change in accounting estimate on the 2017 consolidated financial statements are as follows:

	Year
	Ended
	December
	31, 2017
Decrease in:	
Net income	\$ 894
Basic EPS	\$ 0.02
Diluted EPS	\$ 0.02

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Common Stock

On June 11, 2014, the Company amended its Articles of Incorporation to create two classes of common stock. These two classes are identified as Class A and Class B for Voting Common Stock and Non-Voting Common Stock, respectively, in the accompanying consolidated balance sheet and statement of changes in shareholders' equity. Voting and Non-Voting Common Stock holders have identical rights and privileges, with the exception that Non-Voting Common shares have no voting power unless circumstances arise where instances creating the Non-Voting Common Shares are modified in any way that negatively impact rights of holder. Stock splits or dividends of Voting and Non-Voting Common Shares shall be in like stock (voting for voting and non-voting for non-voting). Any number of Non-Voting Common Stock may be converted to an equal number of Voting Common Stock at the option of the holder; provided that holder is not the initial transferee or an affiliate of initial transferee.

Advertising Expense

Marketing costs are recognized in the month the event or advertisement takes place. These costs are included in advertising and marketing expense as presented in the consolidated statements of income.

Income Taxes

Income tax expense is the total of the current year income tax due or refundable and the change in deferred tax assets and liabilities (excluding deferred tax assets and liabilities related to business combinations or components of other comprehensive income). Deferred tax assets and liabilities are the expected future tax amounts for the temporary differences between carrying amounts and tax bases of assets and liabilities, computed using enacted tax rates. The effect of a change in tax rates on deferred assets and liabilities is recognized in income taxes during the period that includes the enactment date. A valuation allowance, if needed, reduces deferred tax assets to the expected amount more likely than not to be realized. Realization of deferred tax assets is dependent upon the level of historical income, prudent and feasible tax planning strategies, reversals of deferred tax liabilities and estimates of future taxable income. The Company uses the flow-through method of accounting on investments that generate investment tax credits. Under this method, investment tax credits are recognized as a reduction to income tax expense immediately in the period that the credit is generated, to the extent permitted by tax law. In accounting for any temporary difference that arise, the Company has elected the income statement method whereby deferred taxes are adjusted through income tax expense. The Company evaluates uncertain tax positions at the end of each reporting period. The Company may recognize the tax benefit from an uncertain tax position only if it is more likely than not that the tax position will be sustained on examination by the taxing authorities, based on the technical merits of the position. The tax benefit recognized in the financial statements from any such position is measured based on the largest benefit that has a greater than fifty percent likelihood of being realized upon ultimate settlement. For tax positions not meeting the "more likely than not" test, no tax benefit is recorded. Any interest and/or penalties related to income taxes are reported as a component of income tax expense.

The Company has determined that it does not have any material unrecognized tax benefits or obligations as of December 31, 2017. Fiscal years ending on or after December 31, 2014 remain subject to examination by federal and state tax authorities.

Comprehensive Income

Annual comprehensive income reflects the change in the Company's equity during the year arising from transactions and events other than investment by and distributions to shareholders. The only components of other comprehensive income consist of realized and unrealized gains and losses related to investment securities.

Stock Compensation Plans

The Company recognizes compensation cost relating to share-based payment transactions in the consolidated financial statements in accordance with GAAP. The cost is measured based on the fair value of the equity or liability instruments issued. The expense measures the cost of employee services received in exchange for stock options and restricted stock based on the grant-date fair value of the award, and recognizes the cost over the vesting period as

indicated in the option agreement.

101

---

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

## Fair Value of Financial Instruments

GAAP defines fair value as the exchange price that would be received for an asset or paid to transfer a liability (an exit price) in the principal or most advantageous market for the asset or liability in an orderly transaction between market participants on the measurement date. The Company determines the fair values of its financial instruments based on the fair value hierarchy established per GAAP which requires an entity to maximize the use of observable inputs and minimize the use of unobservable inputs when measuring fair value. Investment securities available-for-sale and servicing assets are recorded at fair value on a recurring basis. Loans held for sale, certain impaired loans and foreclosed assets are carried at fair value on a non-recurring basis.

## Earnings Per Share

Basic and diluted earnings per share are computed based on the weighted average number of shares outstanding during each period. Diluted earnings per share reflects the potential dilution that could occur, upon the exercise of stock options or upon the vesting of restricted stock grants, any of which would result in the issuance of common stock that would then be shared in the net income of the Company.

	December 31,		
	2017	2016	2015
Basic earnings per share:			
Net income available to common shareholders	\$ 100,499	\$ 13,773	\$ 20,625
Weighted-average basic shares outstanding	36,592,893	34,202,168	31,079,032
Basic earnings per share	\$ 2.75	\$ 0.40	\$ 0.66
Diluted earnings per share:			
Net income available to common shareholders, for diluted earnings per share	\$ 100,499	\$ 13,773	\$ 20,625
Total weighted-average basic shares outstanding	36,592,893	34,202,168	31,079,032
Add effect of dilutive stock options and restricted stock grants	1,266,642	884,791	894,114
Total weighted-average diluted shares outstanding	37,859,535	35,086,959	31,973,146
Diluted earnings per share	\$ 2.65	\$ 0.39	\$ 0.65
Anti-dilutive shares	253,338	1,777,035	1,811,776

## Reclassifications and Corrections

Certain reclassifications have been made to the prior period's consolidated financial statements to place them on a comparable basis with the current year. Net income and shareholders' equity previously reported were not affected by these reclassifications.

## Recent Accounting Pronouncements

The following is a summary of recent authoritative pronouncements that could impact the accounting, reporting, and/or disclosure of financial information by the Company.

In May 2014, the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") issued Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") No. 2014-09, "Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)" ("ASU 2014-09"). This standard is intended to clarify the principles for recognizing revenue and to develop a common revenue standard for GAAP. The Company's revenue is comprised of loan servicing revenue, net gains on sales of loans and net interest income on financial assets and financial liabilities, all of which are explicitly excluded from the scope of ASU 2014-09, and non-interest income. The Company's revenue streams included in non-interest income that are within the scope of the guidance are primarily related to sales of foreclosed assets, construction supervision fees, title insurance income and trust fiduciary fees. The Company adopted the standard in the first quarter of 2018 with no effect on the consolidated financial statements.

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-02, “Leases (Topic 842)” (“ASU 2016-02”). The FASB issued this ASU to increase transparency and comparability among organizations by recognizing lease assets and lease liabilities on the balance sheet by lessees for those leases classified as operating leases under current GAAP and disclosing key information about leasing arrangements. The amendments in this ASU are effective for the Company on January 1, 2019. The impact of this standard will depend on the Company's lease portfolio at the time of the adoption and the Company is currently assessing the effect that the adoption of this standard will have on the consolidated financial statements.

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-09, “Compensation-Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting (“ASU 2016-09”). ASU 2016-09 simplifies the accounting for share-based payment transactions for items including income tax consequences, classification of awards as equity or liabilities, and classification on the statement of cash flows. ASU 2016-09 was effective and adopted by the Company on January 1, 2017. Starting in the first quarter of 2017, stock-based compensation excess tax benefits or deficiencies are reflected in the Consolidated Statements of Income as a component of the income tax expense, where as they previously were recognized in equity. Additionally, the Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows now present excess tax benefits as an operating activity while any cash paid in lieu of shares for tax-withholding being classified as a financing activity. There were no excess tax benefits in the prior period presented for reclassification. Finally, the Company will continue to incorporate actual forfeitures as they occur in the accrual of compensation expense. As a result of the adoption of ASU 2016-09, the Consolidated Statement of Cash Flows for the year ended December 31, 2017 was impacted as follows: a \$1.0 million increase to net cash provided by operating activities and a \$4.9 million increase to net cash used in financing activities. The adoption of ASU 2016-09 further resulted in a \$0.03 increase in basic and diluted EPS for the year ended December 31, 2017. See Note 10 for information regarding the additional impact on our consolidated financial statements.

In June 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-13, “Measurement of Credit Losses on Financial Instruments” (“ASU 2016-13”). This new guidance replaces the incurred loss impairment methodology in current standards with an expected credit loss methodology and requires consideration of a broader range of information to determine credit loss estimates. ASU 2016-13 requires the measurement of all expected credit losses for financial assets held at the reporting date based on historical experience, current conditions, and reasonable and supportable forecasts and requires enhanced disclosures related to the significant estimates and judgments used in estimating credit losses, as well as the credit quality and underwriting standards of an organization's portfolio. In addition, ASU 2016-13 amends the accounting for credit losses on available-for-sale debt securities and purchased financial assets with credit deterioration. ASU 2016-13 will be effective for the Company on January 1, 2020. The Company is currently evaluating the potential impact of ASU 2016-13 on the consolidated financial statements. In that regard, a cross-functional working group has been formed, under the direction of the Company's Chief Financial Officer and Chief Credit Officer. The working group is comprised of individuals from various functional areas including credit, risk management, finance and information technology, among others. The Company is currently developing an implementation plan to include assessment of processes, portfolio segmentation, model development, system requirements and the identification of data and resource needs, among other things. The Company has also selected a third-party vendor solution to assist in the application of the ASU 2016-13. While the Company is currently unable to reasonably estimate the impact of adopting ASU 2016-13, the impact of adoption is expected to be significantly influenced by the composition, characteristics and quality of loan and securities portfolios as well as the prevailing economic conditions and forecasts as of the adoption date.

In January 2017, the FASB issued ASU No. 2017-01, “Business Combinations (Topic 805) - Clarifying the Definition of a Business” (“ASU 2017-01”). ASU 2017-01 clarifies the definition and provides a more robust framework to use in determining when a set of assets and activities constitutes a business. ASU 2017-01 is intended to provide guidance when evaluating whether transactions should be accounted for as acquisitions (or disposals) of assets or businesses.

ASU 2017-01 will be effective for the Company on January 1, 2018. The Company does not expect this amendment to have a material effect on its consolidated financial statements.

In January 2017, the FASB issued ASU 2017-04, "Intangibles - Goodwill and Other (Topic 350) - Simplifying the Test for Goodwill Impairment" ("ASU 2017-04"). This ASU eliminates Step 2 from the goodwill impairment test. Under the new guidance, entities should perform its annual or interim goodwill impairment test by comparing the fair value of a reporting unit with its carrying amount and recognize an impairment charge for the amount by which the carrying amount exceeds the reporting unit's fair value. Additionally, this ASU eliminates the requirements for any reporting unit with a zero or negative carrying amount to perform a qualitative assessment and, if it fails that qualitative test, to perform Step 2 of the goodwill impairment test. The amendments in this ASU are effective for the Company on January 1, 2020, with early adoption permitted for interim or annual goodwill impairment tests performed on testing dates after January 1, 2017. The Company elected to early adopt ASU 2017-04 in the fourth quarter of 2017. Refer to Note 2. Title Insurance Business for information on this adoption.

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

In February 2017, the FASB issued ASU No. 2017-05, "Other Income - Gains and Losses from the Derecognition of Nonfinancial Assets (Subtopic 610-20) - Clarifying the Scope of Asset Derecognition Guidance and Accounting for Partial Sales of Nonfinancial Assets" ("ASU 2017-05"). ASU 2017-05 clarifies the scope of Subtopic 610-20 and adds guidance on nonfinancial asset derecognition as well as the accounting for partial sales of nonfinancial assets. The amendments conform the derecognition guidance on nonfinancial assets with the model for transactions in the new revenue standard. ASU 2017-05 will be effective for the Company on January 1, 2018 and is not expected to have a significant impact on its consolidated financial statements.

In May 2017, the FASB issued ASU No. 2017-09, "Compensation - Stock Compensation (Topic 718) - Scope of Modification Accounting" ("ASU 2017-09"). ASU 2017-09 clarifies when changes to the terms or conditions of a share-based payment award should be accounted for as a modification. This guidance indicates modification accounting is required when the fair value, vesting conditions, or classification of the award changes. ASU 2017-09 will be effective for the Company on January 1, 2018 and is not expected to have a significant impact on its consolidated financial statements.

In August 2017, the FASB issued ASU No. 2017-12, "Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815) - Targeted Improvements to Accounting for Hedging Activities" ("ASU 2017-12"). ASU 2017-12 amends the hedge accounting recognition and presentation requirements in ASC 815 to improve the transparency and understandability of information conveyed to financial statement users about an entity's risk management activities to better align the entity's financial reporting for hedging relationships with those risk management activities and to reduce the complexity of and simplify the application of hedge accounting. ASU 2017-12 will be effective for the Company on January 1, 2019 and is not expected to have a significant impact on its consolidated financial statements.

In February 2018, the FASB issued ASU No. 2018-02, "Income Statement - Reporting Comprehensive Income (Topic 220): Reclassification of Certain Tax Effects from Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income" ("ASU 2018-02"). ASU 2018-02 addresses the income tax accounting treatment of the stranded tax effects within other comprehensive income. The ASU allows for an entity to reclassify the stranded tax effects resulting from the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act from accumulated other comprehensive income to retained earnings. ASU 2018-02 will be effective for the Company on January 1, 2019, with early adoption permitted. The Company will early adopt ASU 2018-02 in the first quarter of 2018 and will reclassify its stranded tax debit of \$244 thousand within accumulated other comprehensive income to retained earnings at March 31, 2018.

Other accounting standards that have been issued or proposed by the FASB or other standards-setting bodies are not expected to have a material impact on the Company's balance sheets, statements of income and cash flows.

Note 2. Title Insurance Business

Business Combination

On February 1, 2017, the Company completed its acquisition of Reltco, Inc. and National Assurance Title, Inc. (collectively referred to as "Reltco"), two nationwide title agencies under common control based in Tampa, Florida. The acquisition continues the Company's growth strategy, including vertically integrating with complementary services to deliver a high-quality customer experience with speed.

On the acquisition date, the fair value of Reltco included \$5.8 million in assets and \$4.7 million in liabilities. The total acquisition gross consideration at the time of the transaction, including earn-out contingent consideration was approximately \$15.8 million. The acquisition was valued at \$12.7 million after consideration of the applicable fair value adjustments to the earn-out, resulting in the Company paying \$7.8 million in cash and issuing 27,724 shares of its common stock at closing in addition to an earn-out of up to 184,012 shares of its stock and \$3.8 million in cash, in exchange for all of the outstanding shares of Reltco. The earn-out was recorded as a \$4.3 million contingent liability on the acquisition date and is earned proportionally based on the ratio of the new subsidiary's actual future aggregate net income after tax divided by a target net income after tax of approximately \$6.0 million over the four year earn-out period. Fair value measurement of the earn-out was calculated using the Monte Carlo Simulation. The Monte Carlo

Simulation simulates 100,000 trials to assess the expected market price as of the earn-out measurement date at the end of each of the next four years based on the Cox, Ross & Rubinstein option pricing methodology. The Monte Carlo Simulation utilized various assumptions that include a risk free rate of return through the end of each measurement period equivalent to that of a U.S. Treasury, expected volatility of 30.00% over four years and a dividend yield of 0.40%.



Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

The merger was accounted for in accordance with the acquisition method of accounting, and the identifiable assets acquired and liabilities assumed were recorded at their estimated fair values as of the acquisition date separately from goodwill. The estimated fair values of assets acquired and liabilities assumed are based on the information available at the date of the acquisition. Management continues to evaluate these fair values, which are subject to revision as additional information becomes available. Contingent consideration is recorded at fair value based on the terms of the purchase agreement with subsequent quarterly changes in fair value recorded through earnings. The fair value of contingent consideration upon acquisition was \$4.3 million and increased by \$350 thousand during the period leading up to the October 31, 2017 impairment assessment date discussed below. During this pre-impairment assessment period fair value was estimated using the Monte Carlo Simulation. The assumptions utilized include a risk-free rate of return through the end of each measurement period equivalent to that of a U.S. Treasury, expected volatility of 30.00% over the remaining 3.25 years and a dividend yield of 0.51%.

The following table summarizes the allocation of the purchase price on the date of acquisition to assets acquired and the liabilities assumed based on their estimated fair values:

Fair value of assets acquired	
Cash	\$ 102
Accounts receivable	159
Intangible assets	5,505
Total assets acquired	5,766
Fair value of liabilities assumed	
Contingent consideration	4,300
Accounts payable and other liabilities	381
Total liabilities assumed	4,681
Net assets acquired	\$ 1,085
Purchase price	
Common shares issued	27,724
Purchase price per share of the Company's common stock	\$ 20.38
Company common stock issued	565
Cash	\$ 7,798
Total purchase price	8,363
Goodwill	\$ 7,278

Goodwill recorded represents future revenues and efficiencies gained through the Reltco acquisition. Goodwill in this transaction is expected to be deductible for income tax purposes. At the date of acquisition, intangible assets consisted of trade names of \$1.2 million, customer relationships of \$3.9 million, and non-compete agreements of \$405 thousand. The Company recorded merger expenses of \$766 thousand and \$115 thousand during the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively, related to the Reltco acquisition.

**Goodwill and Intangible Asset Impairment**

Goodwill and intangible assets are evaluated for potential impairment annually or when circumstances indicate potential impairment may have occurred. Impairment losses, if any, are determined based upon the excess of carrying value over the estimated fair value of the asset.

As of October 31, 2017 the Company determined that its goodwill and certain intangible assets related to the Reltco business combination had indications of impairment. Reltco's financial performance was significantly lower during the first nine-months of operations and expectations of future profitability for the reporting unit were also lower than originally expected due to a slowing of refinance activity in the mortgage industry. The slowing of refinance activity in the mortgage industry was largely driven by increased levels of market rates during 2017.



Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

In performing the goodwill impairment testing and measurement process to identify possible impairment, the estimated fair value of the Reltco reporting unit was developed using the income and market approaches to value Reltco. The income approach consisted of discounting projected long-term future cash flows, which are derived from internal forecasts and economic expectations for Reltco. The market valuation approach utilized revenue and EBITDA multiples from comparable market transactions.

The results of the impairment test indicated that the estimated fair value of Reltco was less than book value which resulted in a goodwill impairment charge of \$7.3 million in accordance with accounting for Intangibles, Goodwill and other under ASC 360. This non-cash goodwill impairment charge to earnings was recorded as a component of impairment expense on goodwill and other intangibles in the consolidated statement of income.

While the intangibles subject to amortization were determined to be recoverable based on an undiscounted cash flow analysis, impairment of \$720 thousand was realized for indefinite life tradenames. This non-cash intangible impairment charge to earnings was recorded as a component of impairment expense on goodwill and other intangibles in the consolidated statement of income.

The following is a summary of activity in goodwill for the Reltco reporting unit:

Balance, December 31, 2016	\$	—
Goodwill acquired during 2017	7,278	
Accumulated impairment losses (7,278)		
Balance, December 31, 2017	\$	—

As a result of Reltco's results of operations and the direct contractual inclusion of impairment losses in the determination of earn out consideration, the fair value of the contingent consideration decreased by \$4.4 million, which is recorded as a component of impairment expense on goodwill and other intangibles in the consolidated statement of income. The Company subsequently modified the acquisition contract to change the definition of net income related to the earn-out contingent consideration which resulted in \$1.6 million in salaries and employee benefit expense.

Following is a summary of activity in contingent consideration for the Reltco reporting unit:

Balance, December 31, 2016	\$—
Contingent consideration recorded upon acquisition	4,300
Fair value adjustments prior to October 31, 2017 impairment assessment	350
Impact of impairment assessment	(4,350 )
Effect of purchase contract modification	1,600
Balance, December 31, 2017	\$1,900

Fair value of contingent consideration was estimated using the Monte Carlo Simulation. The assumptions utilized in the determining the impact of the impairment assessment and subsequent purchase contract modification include a risk-free rate of return through the end of each measurement period equivalent to that of a U.S. Treasury, expected volatility of 25.00% over the remaining 3.00 years and a dividend yield of 0.51%.

Pro Formas

The following pro forma financial information reflects the Company's estimated consolidated pro forma results of operations as if the Reltco acquisition occurred on January 1, of each of the below years:

	2017	2016	2015
Revenue (net interest income and noninterest income)	\$251,723	\$148,322	\$116,582
Net income available to common shareholders	100,537	15,363	21,451
Basic earnings per share	2.75	0.45	0.69
Diluted earnings per share	2.66	0.44	0.67



Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 3. Unconsolidated Joint Venture

On October 1, 2017, the Company closed the digital banking joint venture between Live Oak Banking Company and First Data Corporation ("First Data"). The new company, named Apiture, combines First Data's and the Bank's digital banking platforms, products, services, and certain human resources used in the creation and delivery of technology solutions for financial institutions. The contributed assets of both the Company and First Data are considered businesses in accordance with relevant accounting standards. At closing both the Bank and First Data received equal voting interests in Apiture in exchange for their respective contributions. As a term of the closing agreements, First Data is entitled to a preference in Apiture's cash earnings from the date of closing through December 31, 2017 and all of 2018, not to exceed \$18.0 million and \$18.9 million, respectively.

As a result of this transaction, the Company and First Data each have, directly or indirectly, equal voting interests in Apiture. In addition, the Company has analyzed the Contribution Agreement and determined that Apiture is not a variable interest entity. The Company also considered the partners' participating rights under the Contribution Agreement and determined that the joint venture partners have the ability to participate in major decisions, which equates to shared decision making. Accordingly, the Bank has significant influence but does not control the joint venture. Therefore, the joint venture will be accounted for as an equity method investment effective on October 1, 2017 (the date of the transaction). Under the equity method of accounting, the net equity investment of the Bank and the Bank's share of net income or loss from the unconsolidated entity will be reflected in the Company's consolidated balance sheets and the consolidated statements of income.

The estimated fair value of Apiture at the date of closing was approximately \$150 million. Based on the aforementioned cash earnings preference to First Data during 2017 and 2018, the valuation of equity interests received in exchange for contributions by the two initial investors was unequal. As a consequence of this preference the initial economic interest in Apiture for First Data was equal to 54.7% or \$82.0 million, while the Company's initial economic interest in Apiture was equal to 45.3%, or \$68.0 million. As the Company had no carrying amount for its contribution in the formation of Apiture, the transaction resulted in the recognition of a \$68.0 million equity method investment included in other assets on the consolidated balance sheet and a one-time pre-tax gain of the same amount reflected in gain on contribution to equity method investment on the consolidated income statement at the date of closing. The estimated fair value of Apiture and the related initial economic interests of investors were based on a discounted cash flows which are inherently subjective by nature.

As a result of unequal economic interests arising from the cash earnings preference, distribution rights and priorities set forth in the Contribution Agreement differ from what is reflected by the underlying percentage voting interests of First Data and Live Oak. Accordingly, GAAP income (loss) is allocated utilizing the hypothetical liquidation at book value ("HLBV") method. Under the HLBV method, in which we allocate income or loss based on the change in each unitholders' claim on the net assets of Apiture at period end, after adjusting for any distributions or contributions made during such period. The HLBV method is commonly applied to equity investments where cash distribution percentages vary at different points in time and are not directly linked to an equity holder's ownership percentage. The HLBV method is a balance sheet-focused approach. A calculation is prepared at each balance sheet date to determine the amount that unitholders would receive if Apiture were to liquidate all of its assets (at GAAP net book value) and distribute the resulting proceeds to its creditors and unitholders based on the contractually defined liquidation priorities. The difference between the calculated liquidation distribution amounts at the beginning and the end of the reporting period, after adjusting for capital contributions and distributions, is used to derive each unitholder's share of the income (loss) for the period. Due to the stated cash earnings preference to First Data and because the HLBV method incorporates non-cash items such as amortization expense, in any given period, income or loss may be allocated disproportionately to unitholders as compared to their respective ownership percentage in our operating partnership, and net income (loss) attributable to the Bank could be more or less net income than actual cash distributions received and more or less income or loss than what may be received in the event of an actual liquidation.

Additionally, the HLBV method could result in no net income attributable to the Company during a period when Apiture reports net income.

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

## Note 4. Securities

The carrying amount of securities and their approximate fair values are reflected in the following table:

	Amortized Cost	Unrealized Gains	Unrealized Losses	Fair Value
December 31, 2017				
US government agencies	\$ 22,778	\$ 3	\$ 157	\$22,624
Residential mortgage-backed securities	70,167	1	1,472	68,696
Mutual fund	2,090	—	55	2,035
Total	\$ 95,035	\$ 4	\$ 1,684	\$93,355
December 31, 2016				
US government agencies	\$ 17,803	\$ 52	\$ 32	\$17,823
Residential mortgage-backed securities	52,301	3	1,031	51,273
Mutual fund	2,012	—	52	1,960
Total	\$ 72,116	\$ 55	\$ 1,115	\$71,056

During the year ended December 31, 2017, there were no sales of securities.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, one security was sold for \$1.9 million resulting in a net gain of \$1 thousand.

Twelve securities were sold for \$17.7 million resulting in a net gain on sale of securities of \$13 thousand during the year ended December 31, 2015.

The following tables show gross unrealized losses and fair value, aggregated by investment category and length of time that the individual securities have been in a continuous unrealized loss position.

	Less Than 12 Months		12 Months or More		Total	
	Fair Value	Unrealized Losses	Fair Value	Unrealized Losses	Fair Value	Unrealized Losses
December 31, 2017						
US government agencies	\$14,842	\$ 100	\$6,465	\$ 57	\$21,307	\$ 157
Residential mortgage-backed securities	23,481	439	40,648	1,033	64,129	1,472
Mutual fund	—	—	2,035	55	2,035	55
Total	\$38,323	\$ 539	\$49,148	\$ 1,145	\$87,471	\$ 1,684

	Less Than 12 Months		12 Months or More		Total	
	Fair Value	Unrealized Losses	Fair Value	Unrealized Losses	Fair Value	Unrealized Losses
December 31, 2016						
US government agencies	\$6,508	\$ 32	\$—	\$ —	\$6,508	\$ 32
Residential mortgage-backed securities	49,109	1,017	1,635	14	50,744	1,031
Mutual fund	1,960	52	—	—	1,960	52
Total	\$57,577	\$ 1,101	\$1,635	\$ 14	\$59,212	\$ 1,115

At December 31, 2017, there were twenty-three residential mortgage-backed securities, three US government agencies and the 504 mutual fund in unrealized loss positions for greater than 12 months and eight residential mortgage-backed securities and five US government agency securities in unrealized loss position for less than 12 months. Unrealized losses at December 31, 2016 consisted of two residential mortgage-backed securities in unrealized loss positions for

greater than 12 months and three US government agency securities, twenty-two residential mortgage-backed securities and the 504 Fund mutual fund investment in unrealized loss positions for less than 12 months.

108

---



Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

These unrealized losses are primarily the result of volatility in the market and are related to market interest rates. Since none of the unrealized losses relate to marketability of the securities or the issuer's ability to honor redemption obligations, and the Company has the intent and ability to hold these securities until they recover their value, none of the securities are deemed to be other than temporarily impaired.

All residential mortgage-backed securities in the Company's portfolio at December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016 were backed by US government sponsored enterprises ("GSEs").

The following is a summary of investment securities by maturity:

	Available-for-sale Amortized cost	Fair value
US government agencies		
Within one year	\$6,323	\$6,295
One to five years	16,455	16,329
Total	22,778	22,624
Residential mortgage-backed securities		
Five to ten years	6,815	6,701
After 10 years	63,352	61,995
Total	70,167	68,696
Total	\$92,945	\$91,320

The table above reflects contractual maturities. Actual results will differ as the loans underlying the mortgage-backed securities may repay sooner than scheduled. This table excludes the 504 Fund mutual fund investment.

At December 31, 2017 and 2016, investment securities with a fair market value of \$2.5 million and \$1.2 million, respectively, were pledged to the Company's trust department for uninsured trust assets held by the trust department and \$100 thousand was pledged to the Ohio State Treasurer to allow the Company's trust department to conduct business in the State of Ohio. In addition, \$1.5 million, was pledged to secure a line of credit with the Company's correspondent bank at December 31, 2016.

109

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 5. Loans Held for Investment and Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses

Loan and Lease Portfolio Segments

The following describes the risk characteristics relevant to each of the portfolio segments. Each loan and lease category is assigned a risk grade during the origination and closing process based on criteria described later in this section.

Commercial and Industrial

Commercial and industrial loans (C&I) receive similar underwriting treatment as commercial real estate loans in that the repayment source is analyzed to determine its ability to meet cash flow coverage requirements as set forth by Bank policies. Repayment of the Bank's C&I loans generally comes from the generation of cash flow as the result of the borrower's business operations. This business cycle itself brings a certain level of risk to the portfolio. In some instances, these loans may carry a higher degree of risk due to a variety of reasons – illiquid collateral, specialized equipment, highly depreciable assets, uncollectable accounts receivable, revolving balances, or simply being unsecured. As a result of these characteristics, the SBA guarantee on these loans is an important factor in mitigating risk.

Construction and Development

Construction and development loans are for the purpose of acquisition and development of land to be improved through the construction of commercial buildings. Such loans are usually paid off through the conversion to permanent financing for the long-term benefit of the borrower's ongoing operations. At the completion of the project, if the loan is converted to permanent financing or if scheduled loan amortization begins, it is then reclassified to the "Commercial Real Estate" segment. Underwriting of construction and development loans typically includes analysis of not only the borrower's financial condition and ability to meet the required debt obligations, but also the general market conditions associated with the area and type of project being funded.

Commercial Real Estate

Commercial real estate loans are extensions of credit secured by owner occupied and non-owner occupied collateral. Underwriting generally involves intensive analysis of the financial strength of the borrower and guarantor, liquidation value of the subject collateral, the associated unguaranteed exposure, and any available secondary sources of repayment, with the greatest emphasis given to a borrower's capacity to meet cash flow coverage requirements as set forth by Bank policies. Such repayment of owner occupied loans is commonly derived from the successful ongoing operations of the business occupying the property. These typically include small businesses and professional practices.

Commercial Land

Commercial land loans are extensions of credit secured by farmland. Such loans are often for land improvements related to agricultural endeavors that may include construction of new specialized facilities. These loans are usually repaid through the conversion to permanent financing, or if scheduled loan amortization begins, for the long-term benefit of the borrower's ongoing operations. Underwriting generally involves intensive analysis of the financial strength of the borrower and guarantor, liquidation value of the subject collateral, the associated unguaranteed exposure, and any available secondary sources of repayment, with the greatest emphasis given to a borrower's capacity to meet cash flow coverage requirements as set forth by Bank policies.

Each of the loan types referenced in the sections above is further segmented into verticals in which the Bank chooses to operate. The Bank chooses to finance businesses operating in specific industries because of certain similarities. The similarities range from historical default and loss characteristics to business operations. However, there are differences that create the necessity to underwrite these loans according to varying criteria and guidelines. When underwriting a loan, the Bank considers numerous factors such as cash flow coverage, the credit scores of the guarantors, revenue growth, practice ownership experience and debt service capacity. Minimum guidelines have been set with regard to these various factors and deviations from those guidelines require compensating strengths when considering a proposed loan.



Table of ContentsLive Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Loans and leases consist of the following:

	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
Commercial & Industrial		
Agriculture	\$3,274	\$1,714
Death Care Management	13,495	9,684
Healthcare	43,301	37,270
Independent Pharmacies	99,920	83,677
Registered Investment Advisors	93,770	68,335
Veterinary Industry	46,387	38,930
Other Industries	184,903	94,836
Total	485,050	334,446
Construction & Development		
Agriculture	34,188	32,372
Death Care Management	6,119	3,956
Healthcare	49,770	30,467
Independent Pharmacies	1,496	2,013
Registered Investment Advisors	376	294
Veterinary Industry	13,184	11,514
Other Industries	58,120	31,715
Total	163,253	112,331
Commercial Real Estate		
Agriculture	46,717	5,591
Death Care Management	67,381	52,510
Healthcare	126,631	114,281
Independent Pharmacies	19,028	15,151
Registered Investment Advisors	11,789	11,462
Veterinary Industry	113,932	102,906
Other Industries	134,172	46,245
Total	519,650	348,146
Commercial Land		
Agriculture	178,897	113,569
Total	178,897	113,569
Total Loans and Leases <sup>1</sup>	1,346,850	908,492
Net Deferred Costs	8,545	7,648
Discount on SBA 7(a) and USDA Unguaranteed <sup>2</sup>	(11,422 )	(8,574 )
Loans and Leases, Net of Unearned	\$1,343,973	\$907,566

<sup>1</sup> Total loans and leases include \$99.7 million and \$37.7 million of U.S. government guaranteed loans as of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, respectively.

The Company measures the carrying value of the retained portion of loans sold at fair value under ASC Subtopic 2825-10. The value of these retained loan balances is discounted based on the estimates derived from comparable unguaranteed loan sales.



Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Credit Risk Profile

The Bank uses internal loan and lease reviews to assess the performance of individual loans and leases by industry segment. An independent review of the loan and lease portfolio is performed annually by an external firm. The goal of the Bank's annual review of each borrower's financial performance is to validate the adequacy of the risk grade assigned.

The Bank uses a grading system to rank the quality of each loan and lease. The grade is periodically evaluated and adjusted as performance dictates. Loan and lease grades 1 through 4 are passing grades and grade 5 is special mention. Collectively, grades 6 through 8 represent classified loans and leases in the Bank's portfolio. The following guidelines govern the assignment of these risk grades:

Exceptional (1 Rated): These loans and leases are of the highest quality, with strong, well-documented sources of repayment. Debt service coverage ("DSC") is over 1.75X based on historical results. Secondary source of repayment is strong, with a loan to value ("LTV") of 65% or less if secured solely by commercial real estate ("CRE"). Discounted collateral coverage from all sources should exceed 125%. Guarantors have credit scores above 740.

Quality (2 Rated): These loans and leases are of good quality, with good, well-documented sources of repayment. DSC is over 1.25X based on historical or pro-forma results. Secondary source of repayment is good, with a LTV of 75% or less if secured solely by CRE. Discounted collateral coverage should exceed 100%. Guarantors have credit scores above 700.

Acceptable (3 rated): These loans and leases are of acceptable quality, with acceptable sources of repayment. DSC of over 1.00X based on historical or pro-forma results. Companies that do not meet these credit metrics must be evaluated to determine if they should be graded below this level.

Acceptable (4 rated): These loans and leases are considered very weak pass. These loans and leases are riskier than a 3-rated credit, but due to various mitigating factors are not considered a Special Mention or worse. The mitigating factors must clearly be identified to offset further downgrade. Examples of loans and leases that may be put in this category include start-up loans and leases and loans and leases with less than 1:1 cash flow coverage with other sources of repayment.

Special mention (5 rated): These loans and leases are considered as emerging problems, with potentially unsatisfactory characteristics. These loans and leases require greater management attention. A loan or lease may be put into this category if the Bank is unable to obtain financial reporting from a company to fully evaluate its position.

Substandard (6 rated): Loans and leases graded Substandard are inadequately protected by current sound net worth, paying capacity of the borrower, or pledged collateral. They typically have unsatisfactory characteristics causing more than acceptable levels of risk, and have one or more well-defined weaknesses that could jeopardize the repayment of the debt.

Doubtful (7 rated): Loans and leases graded Doubtful have inherent weaknesses that make collection or liquidation in full questionable. Loans and leases graded Doubtful must be placed on non-accrual status.

Loss (8 rated): Loss rated loans and leases are considered uncollectible and of such little value that their continuance as an active Bank asset is not warranted. The asset should be charged off, even though partial recovery may be possible in the future.

Table of ContentsLive Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

The following tables summarize the risk grades of each category:

	Risk Grades 1 - 4	Risk Grade 5	Risk Grades 6 - 8	Total
December 31, 2017				
Commercial & Industrial				
Agriculture	\$ 3,052	\$ 222	\$ —	\$ 3,274
Death Care Management	13,371	117	7	13,495
Healthcare	36,530	2,246	4,525	43,301
Independent Pharmacies	86,152	5,541	8,227	99,920
Registered Investment Advisors	90,911	2,134	725	93,770
Veterinary Industry	42,313	1,704	2,370	46,387
Other Industries	184,540	363	—	184,903
Total	456,869	12,327	15,854	485,050
Construction & Development				
Agriculture	31,738	2,450	—	34,188
Death Care Management	6,119	—	—	6,119
Healthcare	47,813	699	1,258	49,770
Independent Pharmacies	1,496	—	—	1,496
Registered Investment Advisors	376	—	—	376
Veterinary Industry	13,184	—	—	13,184
Other Industries	58,120	—	—	58,120
Total	158,846	3,149	1,258	163,253
Commercial Real Estate				
Agriculture	46,717	—	—	46,717
Death Care Management	60,671	3,881	2,829	67,381
Healthcare	112,321	9,992	4,318	126,631
Independent Pharmacies	15,641	1,825	1,562	19,028
Registered Investment Advisors	11,649	140	—	11,789
Veterinary Industry	97,065	2,948	13,919	113,932
Other Industries	133,493	679	—	134,172
Total	477,557	19,465	22,628	519,650
Commercial Land				
Agriculture	176,811	2,086	—	178,897
Total	176,811	2,086	—	178,897
Total <sup>1</sup>	\$ 1,270,083	\$ 37,027	\$ 39,740	\$ 1,346,850

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

	Risk Grades 1 - 4	Risk Grade 5	Risk Grades 6 - 8	Total
December 31, 2016				
Commercial & Industrial				
Agriculture	\$ 1,656	\$ 58	\$ —	\$1,714
Death Care Management	9,452	121	111	9,684
Healthcare	28,723	681	7,866	37,270
Independent Pharmacies	73,948	6,542	3,187	83,677
Registered Investment Advisors	65,297	2,246	792	68,335
Veterinary Industry	34,407	1,967	2,556	38,930
Other Industries	94,736	100	—	94,836
Total	308,219	11,715	14,512	334,446
Construction & Development				
Agriculture	32,061	—	311	32,372
Death Care Management	3,956	—	—	3,956
Healthcare	30,467	—	—	30,467
Independent Pharmacies	2,013	—	—	2,013
Registered Investment Advisors	294	—	—	294
Veterinary Industry	9,725	1,789	—	11,514
Other Industries	31,715	—	—	31,715
Total	110,231	1,789	311	112,331
Commercial Real Estate				
Agriculture	5,591	—	—	5,591
Death Care Management	46,427	4,314	1,769	52,510
Healthcare	103,097	7,142	4,042	114,281
Independent Pharmacies	12,654	1,968	529	15,151
Registered Investment Advisors	11,462	—	—	11,462
Veterinary Industry	88,168	3,995	10,743	102,906
Other Industries	46,245	—	—	46,245
Total	313,644	17,419	17,083	348,146
Commercial Land				
Agriculture	112,333	1,138	98	113,569
Total	112,333	1,138	98	113,569
Total <sup>1</sup>	\$ 844,427	\$ 32,061	\$ 32,004	\$908,492

Total loans and leases include \$99.7 million of U.S. government guaranteed loans as of December 31, 2017, segregated by risk grade as follows: Risk Grades 1 – 4 = \$65.0 million, Risk Grade 5 = \$6.7 million, Risk Grades 6 – 8 = \$28.0 million. As of December 31, 2016 total loans and leases include \$37.7 million of U.S. government guaranteed loans, segregated by risk grade as follows: Risk Grades 1 – 4 = \$8.7 million, Risk Grade 5 = \$7.7 million, Risk Grades 6 – 8 = \$21.3 million.



Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

## Past Due Loans and Leases

Loans and leases are considered past due if the required principal and interest payments have not been received as of the date such payments were due. Loans and leases less than 30 days past due and accruing are included within current loans and leases shown below. The following tables show an age analysis of past due loans and leases as of the dates presented.

	Less Than 30 Days Past Due & Not Accruing	30-89 Days Past Due & Accruing	30-89 Days Past Due & Not Accruing	Greater Than 90 Days Past Due	Total Not Accruing & Past Due	Current	Total Loans and Leases	90 Days or More Past Due & Still Accruing
December 31, 2017								
Commercial & Industrial								
Agriculture	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$3,274	\$3,274	\$ —
Death Care Management	—	—	—	—	—	13,495	13,495	—
Healthcare	788	131	14	3,004	3,937	39,364	43,301	—
Independent Pharmacies	236	2,930	1,349	3,376	7,891	92,029	99,920	—
Registered Investment Advisors	—	321	—	—	321	93,449	93,770	—
Veterinary Industry	212	594	508	797	2,111	44,276	46,387	—
Other Industries	—	—	—	—	—	184,903	184,903	—
Total	1,236	3,976	1,871	7,177	14,260	470,790	485,050	—
Construction & Development								
Agriculture	—	—	—	—	—	34,188	34,188	—
Death Care Management	—	—	—	—	—	6,119	6,119	—
Healthcare	—	—	—	—	—	49,770	49,770	—
Independent Pharmacies	—	—	—	—	—	1,496	1,496	—
Registered Investment Advisors	—	—	—	—	—	376	376	—
Veterinary Industry	—	—	—	—	—	13,184	13,184	—
Other Industries	—	—	—	—	—	58,120	58,120	—
Total	—	—	—	—	—	163,253	163,253	—
Commercial Real Estate								
Agriculture	—	—	—	—	—	46,717	46,717	—
Death Care Management	—	—	168	1,391	1,559	65,822	67,381	—
Healthcare	40	54	1,916	1,550	3,560	123,071	126,631	—
Independent Pharmacies	—	—	—	1,562	1,562	17,466	19,028	—
Registered Investment Advisors	—	—	—	—	—	11,789	11,789	—
Veterinary Industry	1,804	3,226	—	4,765	9,795	104,137	113,932	—
Other Industries	—	—	—	—	—	134,172	134,172	—
Total	1,844	3,280	2,084	9,268	16,476	503,174	519,650	—
Commercial Land								
Agriculture	—	—	—	—	—	178,897	178,897	—
Total	—	—	—	—	—	178,897	178,897	—

Edgar Filing: Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. - Form 10-K

Total <sup>1</sup>	\$ 3,080	\$ 7,256	\$ 3,955	\$ 16,445	\$ 30,736	\$ 1,316,114	\$ 1,346,850	\$	—
--------------------	----------	----------	----------	-----------	-----------	--------------	--------------	----	---

115

---

Table of ContentsLive Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

	Less Than 30 Days Past Due & Not Accruing	30-89 Days Past Due & Accruing	30-89 Days Past Due & Not Accruing	Greater Than 90 Days Past Due	Total Not Accruing & Past Due	Current	Total Loans and Leases	90 Days or More Past Due & Still Accruing
December 31, 2016								
Commercial & Industrial								
Agriculture	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 1,714	\$ 1,714	\$ —
Death Care Management	—	—	—	—	—	9,684	9,684	—
Healthcare	—	272	496	5,920	6,688	30,582	37,270	—
Independent Pharmacies	42	293	408	2,349	3,092	80,585	83,677	—
Registered Investment Advisors	—	—	—	—	—	68,335	68,335	—
Veterinary Industry	32	151	646	1,441	2,270	36,660	38,930	—
Other Industries	—	—	—	—	—	94,836	94,836	—
Total	74	716	1,550	9,710	12,050	322,396	334,446	—
Construction & Development								
Agriculture	231	80	—	—	311	32,061	32,372	—
Death Care Management	—	—	—	—	—	3,956	3,956	—
Healthcare	—	—	—	—	—	30,467	30,467	—
Independent Pharmacies	—	—	—	—	—	2,013	2,013	—
Registered Investment Advisors	—	—	—	—	—	294	294	—
Veterinary Industry	—	—	—	—	—	11,514	11,514	—
Other Industries	—	—	—	—	—	31,715	31,715	—
Total	231	80	—	—	311	112,020	112,331	—
Commercial Real Estate								
Agriculture	—	—	—	—	—	5,591	5,591	—
Death Care Management	—	—	188	1,423	1,611	50,899	52,510	—
Healthcare	—	—	3,180	45	3,225	111,056	114,281	—
Independent Pharmacies	—	—	—	529	529	14,622	15,151	—
Registered Investment Advisors	—	—	—	—	—	11,462	11,462	—
Veterinary Industry	898	3,981	737	5,158	10,774	92,132	102,906	—
Other Industries	—	—	—	—	—	46,245	46,245	—
Total	898	3,981	4,105	7,155	16,139	332,007	348,146	—
Commercial Land								
Agriculture	58	40	—	—	98	113,471	113,569	—
Total	58	40	—	—	98	113,471	113,569	—
Total <sup>1</sup>	\$ 1,261	\$ 4,817	\$ 5,655	\$ 16,865	\$ 28,598	\$ 879,894	\$ 908,492	\$ —

<sup>1</sup>Total loans and leases include \$99.7 million of U.S. government guaranteed loans as of December 31, 2017, of which \$15.0 million is greater than 90 days past due, \$7.4 million is 30-89 days past due and \$77.3 million is included in current loans and leases as presented above. As of December 31, 2016, total loans and leases include \$37.7 million of U.S. government guaranteed loans, of which \$13.7 million is greater than 90 days past due, \$6.8

million is 30-89 days past due and \$17.2 million is included in current loans and leases as presented above.

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

## Nonaccrual Loans and Leases

Loans and leases that become 90 days delinquent, or in cases where there is evidence that the borrower's ability to make the required payments is impaired, are placed in nonaccrual status and interest accrual is discontinued. If interest on nonaccrual loans and leases had been accrued in accordance with the original terms, interest income would have increased by approximately \$1.1 million, \$622 thousand and \$794 thousand for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively. All nonaccrual loans and leases are included in the held for investment portfolio.

Nonaccrual loans and leases as of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016 are as follows:

December 31, 2017	Loan and Lease Balance	Guaranteed Balance	Unguaranteed Exposure
Commercial & Industrial			
Healthcare	\$3,806	\$ 3,235	\$ 571
Independent Pharmacies	4,961	3,906	1,055
Veterinary Industry	1,517	1,478	39
Total	10,284	8,619	1,665
Commercial Real Estate			
Death Care Management	1,559	1,237	322
Healthcare	3,506	2,719	787
Independent Pharmacies	1,562	1,562	—
Veterinary Industry	6,569	5,733	836
Total	13,196	11,251	1,945
Total	\$23,480	\$ 19,870	\$ 3,610
December 31, 2016	Loan and Lease Balance	Guaranteed Balance	Unguaranteed Exposure
Commercial & Industrial			
Healthcare	\$6,416	\$ 5,152	\$ 1,264
Independent Pharmacies	2,799	2,204	595
Veterinary Industry	2,119	2,079	40
Total	11,334	9,435	1,899
Construction & Development			
Agriculture	231	173	58
Total	231	173	58
Commercial Real Estate			
Death Care Management	1,611	1,263	348
Healthcare	3,225	2,731	494
Independent Pharmacies	529	—	529
Veterinary Industry	6,793	5,395	1,398
Total	12,158	9,389	2,769
Commercial Land			
Agriculture	58	—	58
Total	58	—	58
Total	\$23,781	\$ 18,997	\$ 4,784



Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Allowance for Loan and Lease Loss Methodology

The methodology and the estimation process for calculating the Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses (“ALLL”) is described below:

Estimated credit losses should meet the criteria for accrual of a loss contingency, i.e., a provision to the ALLL, set forth in GAAP. The Company’s methodology for determining the ALLL is based on the requirements of GAAP, the Interagency Policy Statement on the Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses and other regulatory and accounting pronouncements. The ALLL is determined by the sum of three separate components: (i) the impaired loan and lease component, which addresses specific reserves for impaired loans and leases; (ii) the general reserve component, which addresses reserves for pools of homogeneous loans and leases; and (iii) an unallocated reserve component (if any) based on management’s judgment and experience. The loan and lease pools and impaired loans and leases are mutually exclusive; any loan or lease that is impaired is excluded from its homogenous pool for purposes of that pool’s reserve calculation, regardless of the level of impairment.

The ALLL policy for pooled loans and leases is governed in accordance with banking regulatory guidance for homogenous pools of non-impaired loans and leases that have similar risk characteristics. The Company follows a consistent and structured approach for assessing the need for reserves within each individual loan and lease pool. Loans and leases are considered impaired when, based on current information and events, it is probable that the creditor will be unable to collect all interest and principal payments due according to the originally contracted, or reasonably modified, terms of the loan or lease agreement. The Company has determined that loans and leases that meet the criteria defined below must be reviewed quarterly to determine if they are impaired.

• All commercial loans and leases classified substandard or worse.

• Any other delinquent loan or lease that is in a nonaccrual status, or any loan or lease that is delinquent more than 89 days and still accruing interest.

• Any loan or lease which has been modified such that it meets the definition of a TDR.

The Company’s policy for impaired loan accounting subjects all loans and leases to impairment recognition; however, loan and lease relationships with unguaranteed credit exposure of less than \$100,000 are generally not evaluated on an individual basis for impairment and instead are evaluated collectively using a methodology based on historical specific reserves on similar sized loans or leases. Any loan or lease not meeting the above criteria and determined to be impaired is subjected to an impairment analysis, which is a calculation of the probable loss on the loan or lease. This portion is the loan’s “impairment,” and is established as a specific reserve against the loan or lease, or charged against the ALLL.

Individual specific reserve amounts imply probability of loss and may not be carried in the reserve indefinitely. When the amount of the actual loss becomes reasonably quantifiable, the amount of the loss is charged off against the ALLL, whether or not all liquidation and recovery efforts have been completed. If the total amount of the individual specific reserve that will eventually be charged off cannot yet be sufficiently quantified but some portion of the impairment can be viewed as a confirmed loss, then the confirmed loss portion should be charged off against the ALLL and the individual specific reserve reduced by a corresponding amount.

For impaired loans and leases, the reserve amount is calculated on a loan or lease-specific basis. The Company utilizes two methods of analyzing impaired loans and leases not guaranteed by the SBA:

The Fair Market Value of Collateral method utilizes the value at which the collateral could be sold considering the appraised value, appraisal discount rate, prior liens and selling costs. The amount of the reserve is the deficit of the estimated collateral value compared to the loan or lease balance.

• The Present Value of Future Cash Flows method takes into account the amount and timing of cash flows and the effective interest rate used to discount the cash flows.





Table of ContentsLive Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

The following tables detail activity in the allowance for loan and lease losses by portfolio segment allowance for the periods presented:

	Construction & Development	Commercial Real Estate	Commercial & Industrial	Commercial Land	Total
December 31, 2017					
Beginning Balance	\$ 1,693	\$ 5,897	\$ 8,413	\$ 2,206	\$18,209
Charge offs	—	(1,177 )	(2,617 )	(58 )	(3,852 )
Recoveries	—	191	101	5	297
Provision	337	4,269	4,854	76	9,536
Ending Balance	\$ 2,030	\$ 9,180	\$ 10,751	\$ 2,229	\$24,190

December 31, 2016					
Beginning Balance	\$ 1,064	\$ 2,486	\$ 2,766	\$ 1,099	\$7,415
Charge offs	—	(707 )	(1,464 )	(63 )	(2,234 )
Recoveries	—	6	486	—	492
Provision	629	4,112	6,625	1,170	12,536
Ending Balance	\$ 1,693	\$ 5,897	\$ 8,413	\$ 2,206	\$18,209

December 31, 2015					
Beginning Balance	\$ 586	\$ 2,291	\$ 1,369	\$ 161	\$4,407
Charge offs	—	(164 )	(978 )	—	(1,142 )
Recoveries	—	131	213	—	344
Provision	478	228	2,162	938	3,806
Ending Balance	\$ 1,064	\$ 2,486	\$ 2,766	\$ 1,099	\$7,415

The following tables detail the recorded allowance for loan and lease losses and the investment in loans and lease related to each portfolio segment, disaggregated on the basis of impairment evaluation methodology:

	Construction & Development	Commercial Real Estate	Commercial & Industrial	Commercial Land	Total	
December 31, 2017						
Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses:						
Loans and leases individually evaluated for impairment		\$ 157	\$ 1,502	\$ 1,126	\$ —	\$2,785
Loans and leases collectively evaluated for impairment <sup>2</sup>		1,873	7,678	9,625	2,229	21,405
Total allowance for loan and lease losses		\$ 2,030	\$ 9,180	\$ 10,751	\$ 2,229	\$24,190
Loans and leases receivable <sup>1</sup> :						
Loans and leases individually evaluated for impairment		\$ 1,237	\$ 17,105	\$ 8,672	\$ —	\$27,014
Loans and leases collectively evaluated for impairment <sup>2</sup>		162,016	502,545	476,378	178,897	1,319,836
Total loans and leases receivable		\$ 163,253	\$ 519,650	\$ 485,050	\$ 178,897	\$1,346,850

Table of ContentsLive Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

December 31, 2016	Construction & Development	Commercial Real Estate	Commercial & Industrial	Commercial Land	Total
Allowance for Loan and Lease Losses:					
Loans and leases individually evaluated for impairment	\$ —	\$ 1,496	\$ 1,458	\$ —	\$ 2,954
Loans and leases collectively evaluated for impairment <sup>2</sup>	1,693	4,401	6,955	2,206	15,255
Total allowance for loan and lease losses	\$ 1,693	\$ 5,897	\$ 8,413	\$ 2,206	\$ 18,209
Loans and Leases Receivable <sup>1</sup> :					
Loans and leases individually evaluated for impairment	\$ —	\$ 16,359	\$ 6,884	\$ —	\$ 23,243
Loans and leases collectively evaluated for impairment <sup>2</sup>	112,331	331,787	327,562	113,569	885,249
Total loans and leases receivable	\$ 112,331	\$ 348,146	\$ 334,446	\$ 113,569	\$ 908,492

Loans and leases receivable includes \$99.7 million of U.S. government guaranteed loans as of December 31, 2017, 1 of which \$28.1 million are impaired. As of December 31, 2016, loans and leases receivable includes \$37.7 million of U.S. government guaranteed loans, of which \$22.1 million are considered impaired.

Included in loans and leases collectively evaluated for impairment are impaired loans and leases with individual unguaranteed exposure of less than \$100 thousand. As of December 31, 2017, these balances totaled \$14.8 million, of which \$13.2 million are guaranteed by the U.S. government and \$1.6 million are unguaranteed. As of December 31, 2016, these balances totaled \$12.3 million, of which \$10.0 million are guaranteed by the U.S. government and \$2.3 million are unguaranteed. The allowance for loan and lease losses associated with these loans and leases totaled \$279 thousand and \$438 thousand as of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, respectively.

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Loans and leases classified as impaired as of the dates presented are summarized in the following tables.

December 31, 2017	Recorded Investment	Guaranteed Balance	Unguaranteed Exposure
Commercial & Industrial			
Death Care Management	\$ 7	\$ —	\$ 7
Healthcare	4,551	3,235	1,316
Independent Pharmacies	8,571	6,356	2,215
Registered Investment Advisors	733	—	733
Veterinary Industry	2,762	2,001	761
Total	16,624	11,592	5,032
Construction & Development			
Healthcare	1,237	944	293
Total	1,237	944	293
Commercial Real Estate			
Death Care Management	2,831	1,237	1,594
Healthcare	4,315	2,967	1,348
Independent Pharmacies	1,562	1,562	—
Veterinary Industry	15,266	9,768	5,498
Total	23,974	15,534	8,440
Commercial Land			
Agriculture	—	—	—
Total	—	—	—
Total	\$ 41,835	\$ 28,070	\$ 13,765
December 31, 2016	Recorded Investment	Guaranteed Balance	Unguaranteed Exposure
Commercial & Industrial			
Death Care Management	\$ 111	\$ —	\$ 111
Healthcare	7,923	5,453	2,470
Independent Pharmacies	3,514	2,495	1,019
Registered Investment Advisors	796	—	796
Veterinary Industry	2,882	2,199	683
Total	15,226	10,147	5,079
Construction & Development			
Agriculture	300	233	67
Total	300	233	67
Commercial Real Estate			
Death Care Management	1,768	1,264	504
Healthcare	4,044	2,985	1,059
Independent Pharmacies	528	—	528
Veterinary Industry	13,561	7,518	6,043
Total	19,901	11,767	8,134
Commercial Land			
Agriculture	91	—	91
Total	91	—	91
Total	\$ 35,518	\$ 22,147	\$ 13,371



Table of ContentsLive Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

The following table presents evaluated balances of loans and leases classified as impaired at the dates presented that carried an associated reserve as compared to those with no reserve. The recorded investment includes accrued interest and net deferred loan and lease fees or costs.

	December 31, 2017		Total	Unpaid Principal Balance	Related Allowance Recorded
	Recorded Investment With a Recorded Allowanc	With No Recorded Allowance			
Commercial & Industrial					
Death Care Management	\$—	\$ 7	\$7	\$7	\$ —
Healthcare	3,521	1,030	4,551	5,643	165
Independent Pharmacies	8,154	417	8,571	9,078	521
Registered Investment Advisors	662	71	733	725	504
Veterinary Industry	2,505	257	2,762	3,113	182
Total	14,842	1,782	16,624	18,566	1,372
Construction & Development					
Healthcare	1,237	—	1,237	1,258	157
Total	1,237	—	1,237	1,258	157
Commercial Real Estate					
Death Care Management	2,221	610	2,831	2,964	260
Healthcare	3,717	598	4,315	4,332	192
Independent Pharmacies	1,562	—	1,562	1,933	8
Veterinary Industry	13,711	1,555	15,266	16,584	1,075
Total	21,211	2,763	23,974	25,813	1,535
Commercial Land					
Agriculture	—	—	—	58	—
Total	—	—	—	58	—
Total Impaired Loans and Leases	\$37,290	\$ 4,545	\$41,835	\$45,695	\$ 3,064

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

	December 31, 2016		Total	Unpaid Principal Balance	Related Allowance Recorded
	Recorded Investment With a Recorded Allowance	With No Recorded Allowance			
Commercial & Industrial					
Death Care Management	\$8	\$ 103	\$111	\$111	\$ 1
Healthcare	7,259	664	7,923	8,120	778
Independent Pharmacies	3,184	330	3,514	3,610	327
Registered Investment Advisors	796	—	796	792	514
Veterinary Industry	2,754	128	2,882	3,369	106
Total	14,001	1,225	15,226	16,002	1,726
Construction & Development					
Agriculture	300	—	300	311	13
Total	300	—	300	311	13
Commercial Real Estate					
Death Care Management	1,580	188	1,768	1,904	34
Healthcare	3,514	530	4,044	4,042	47
Independent Pharmacies	528	—	528	529	284
Veterinary Industry	11,193	2,368	13,561	14,283	1,273
Total	16,815	3,086	19,901	20,758	1,638
Commercial Land					
Agriculture	91	—	91	161	15
Total	91	—	91	161	15
Total Impaired Loans and Leases	\$31,207	\$ 4,311	\$35,518	\$37,232	\$ 3,392

123

Table of ContentsLive Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

The following table presents the average recorded investment of impaired loans and leases for each period presented and interest income recognized during the period in which the loans and leases were considered impaired.

	December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016		December 31, 2015	
	Average Balance	Interest Income Recognized	Average Balance	Interest Income Recognized	Average Balance	Interest Income Recognized
<b>Commercial &amp; Industrial</b>						
Death Care Management	\$8	\$ —	\$112	\$ 1	\$—	\$ —
Healthcare	6,101	53	7,513	81	3,375	276
Independent Pharmacies	6,018	100	2,570	76	1,701	148
Registered Investment Advisors	759	50	817	22	—	—
Veterinary Industry	2,523	45	2,537	35	2,029	109
Total	15,409	248	13,549	215	7,105	533
<b>Construction &amp; Development</b>						
Agriculture	—	—	317	—	—	—
Healthcare	1,240	11	—	—	—	—
Total	1,240	11	317	—	—	—
<b>Commercial Real Estate</b>						
Death Care Management	2,882	50	1,789	7	1,420	—
Healthcare	4,381	49	4,093	41	1,403	—
Independent Pharmacies	1,708	—	538	3	—	—
Veterinary Industry	14,605	536	13,554	336	10,870	556
Other Industries	—	—	—	—	—	—
Total	23,576	635	19,974	387	13,693	556
<b>Commercial Land</b>						
Agriculture	113	—	294	—	—	—
Total	113	—	294	—	—	—
Total	\$40,338	\$ 894	\$34,134	\$ 602	\$20,798	\$ 1,089

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

The following table represent the types of TDRs that were made during the periods presented:

	December 31, 2017		December 31, 2016		December 31, 2015	
	All Restructurings		All Restructurings		All Restructurings	
	Number of	Post-	Number of	Post-	Number of	Post-
	Loans	Modification	Loans	Modification	Loans	Modification
	and	Recorded	and	Recorded	and	Recorded
	Leases	Investment	Leases	Investment	Leases	Investment
Interest Only						
Commercial & Industrial						
Healthcare	—	\$ —	—	\$ —	3	\$ 1,087
Commercial Real Estate						
Healthcare	—	—	—	—	1	94
Total Interest Only	—	—	—	—	4	1,181
Extended Amortization						
Commercial & Industrial						
Independent Pharmacies	—	—	—	—	2	322
Total Extended Amortization	—	—	—	—	2	322
Payment Deferral and Extended Amortization						
Commercial & Industrial						
Independent Pharmacies	1	262	—	—	—	—
Total Payment Deferral and Extended Amortization	1	262	—	—	—	—
Payment Deferral						
Commercial & Industrial						
Veterinary Industry	2	559	1	420	—	—
Healthcare	—	—	1	440	—	—
Total Payment Deferral	2	559	2	860	—	—
Total	3	\$ 821	2	\$ 860	6	\$ 1,503

Concessions made to improve a loan and lease's performance have varying degrees of success. During the twelve months ended December 31, 2017, one TDR that was modified within the twelve months ended December 31, 2017 subsequently defaulted. This TDR was a commercial and industrial independent pharmacy loan that was previously modified for payment deferral and extended amortization. The recorded investment for this TDR at December 31, 2017 was \$1.1 million. During the twelve months ended December 31, 2016, one TDR that was modified within the twelve months ended December 31, 2016 subsequently defaulted. This TDR was a commercial and industrial healthcare loan that was previously modified for payment deferral. There was no recorded investment for this TDR at December 31, 2016. No TDRs that were modified within the previous twelve months ending December 31, 2015 subsequently defaulted.



Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

## Note 6. Servicing Assets

Loans serviced for others are not included in the accompanying balance sheet. The unpaid principal balances of loans serviced for others requiring recognition of a servicing asset were \$2.44 billion, \$2.22 billion and \$1.78 billion at December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively. The unpaid principal balance for all loans serviced for others was \$2.54 billion, \$2.35 billion and \$1.94 billion at December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

The following summarizes the activity pertaining to servicing rights:

	2017	2016
Balance at beginning of period	\$51,994	\$44,230
Additions, net	14,028	16,584
Fair value changes:		
Due to changes in valuation inputs or assumptions	(2,722 )	(955 )
Decay due to increases in principal paydowns or runoff	(11,002 )	(7,865 )
Balance at end of period	\$52,298	\$51,994

The fair value of servicing rights was determined using discount rates ranging from 0.00% to 15.40% on December 31, 2017, and 8.70% to 13.90% on December 31, 2016. The fair value of servicing rights was determined using prepayment speeds ranging from 0.00% to 11.50% on December 31, 2017 and 2.40% to 9.80% on December 31, 2016, depending on the stratification of the specific right. Changes to fair value are reported in loan servicing revenue and revaluation within the consolidated statements of income.

The fair value of servicing rights is highly sensitive to changes in underlying assumptions. Changes in prepayment speed assumptions have the most significant impact on the fair value of servicing rights. Generally, as interest rates rise on variable rate loans, loan prepayments increase due to an increase in refinance activity, which results in a decrease in the fair value of servicing assets. Measurement of fair value is limited to the conditions existing and the assumptions used as of a particular point in time, and those assumptions may not be appropriate if they are applied at a different time.

## Note 7. Premises, Equipment and Leases

## Components of Premises and Equipment

Components of premises and equipment and total accumulated depreciation at December 31, 2017 and 2016 are as follows:

	2017	2016
Buildings	\$21,875	\$21,713
Land improvements	3,566	3,524
Furniture and equipment	10,391	9,735
Computers and software	561	444
Leasehold improvements	7,539	612
Land	8,650	3,749
Transportation	44,863	23,470
Solar panels	90,640	—
Deposits on fixed assets	6,534	10,320
Premises and equipment, total	194,619	73,567
Less accumulated depreciation	(15,829 )	(8,906 )
Premises and equipment, net of depreciation	\$178,790	\$64,661

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Deposits on fixed assets consist primarily of preliminary costs related the Company's planned third building and parking deck at its headquarters campus and initial deposit on a new airplane. Outstanding contract commitments for the new airplane purchase is \$25.5 million with the final purchase payments expected in the second quarter of 2019. Depreciation expense for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 amounted to \$9.6 million, \$4.2 million and \$2.9 million, respectively.

Lease Obligations

Pursuant to the terms of non-cancelable lease agreements in effect at December 31, 2017 pertaining to Company premises and equipment, future minimum rent commitments under various operating leases are as follows:

Year	Amount
2018	\$ 964
2019	793
2020	380
2021	232
2022	237
Thereafter	230
Total	\$ 2,836

Certain leases contain renewal options for various additional terms after the expiration of the current lease term. Lease payments for the renewal period are not included in the future minimum lease table above.

The Company's total rent expense related to the aforementioned leases for 2017, 2016, and 2015 was \$848 thousand, \$632 thousand and \$385 thousand, respectively.

Note 8. Deposits

The types of deposits at December 31, 2017 and 2016 are:

	2017	2016
Noninterest-bearing deposits	\$57,868	\$27,990
Interest-bearing deposits:		
Interest-bearing checking	36,978	27,402
Money market	188,146	489,978
Savings	696,989	—
Time deposits	1,280,282	939,706
Total	2,202,395	1,457,086
Total deposits	\$2,260,263	\$1,485,076

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

The aggregate amount of time deposits in denominations of \$250 thousand or more at December 31, 2017 and 2016 was approximately \$234.4 million and \$253.7 million, respectively. At December 31, 2017 the scheduled maturities of total time deposits are as follows:

Year	Amount
2018	\$892,164
2019	116,615
2020	105,746
2021	66,420
2022	23,263
Thereafter	76,074
Total	\$1,280,282

There were no pledged certificates of deposit as of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016.

## Note 9. Borrowings

Total outstanding short and long term borrowings consisted of the following:

	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
Short term borrowings		
On October 20, 2017, the Company entered into a revolving line of credit of \$20 million with an unaffiliated commercial bank. The note is unsecured and accrues interest at LIBOR plus 1.750% for a term of 12 months. Payments are interest only with all principal and accrued interest due on October 19, 2018. The terms of this loan require the Company to maintain minimum capital and debt service coverage ratios. No advances have been made to this line of credit and there is \$20 million of available credit remaining at December 31, 2017.	\$ —	—
Total short term borrowings	\$ —	—
Long term borrowings		
On September 11, 2014, the Company financed the construction of an additional building located on the Company's Tiburon Drive main campus for a \$24 million construction line of credit with an unaffiliated commercial bank, secured by both properties at its Tiburon Drive main facility location. Payments were interest only through September 11, 2016 at a fixed rate of 3.95% for a term of 84 months. Monthly principal and interest payments of \$146 thousand began in October 2016 with all principal and accrued interest due on September 11, 2021. The construction line is fully disbursed and there was no remaining available credit on this construction line at December 31, 2017.	\$ 22,990	\$ 23,864
On February 23, 2015, the Company transferred two related party loans to an unaffiliated commercial bank in exchange for \$4.7 million. The exchange price equated to the unpaid principal balance plus accrued but uncollected interest at the time of transfer. The terms of the transfer agreement with the unaffiliated commercial bank identified the transaction as a secured borrowing for accounting purposes. Interest accrues at prime plus 1% with monthly principal and interest payments over a term of 60 months. The interest rate at December 31, 2017 is 5.25%. The maturity date is October 5, 2019. The pledged collateral is classified in other assets with a fair value of \$3.6 million at December 31, 2017. Underlying loans carry a risk grade of 3 and are	3,574	3,979

current with no delinquencies.

On September 18, 2014, the Company entered into a note payable revolving line of credit of \$8.1 million with an unaffiliated commercial bank. On April 18, 2017, the Company renewed and increased the revolving line of credit to \$25 million. The note is unsecured and accrues interest at Prime minus 0.50% for a term of 24 months. Payments are interest only with all principal and accrued interest due on April 30, 2019. The terms of this loan require the Company to maintain minimum capital, liquidity and Texas ratios. This line of credit was paid in full on August 25, 2017, and there is \$25 million of available credit remaining at December 31, 2017.

Total long term borrowings	—	—
	\$ 26,564	\$ 27,843

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

The Company may purchase federal funds through unsecured federal funds lines of credit with various correspondent banks, which totaled \$47.5 million and \$26.5 million as of December 31, 2017 and 2016. These lines are intended for short-term borrowings and are subject to restrictions limiting the frequency and terms of advances. These lines of credit are payable on demand and bear interest based upon the daily federal funds rate. The Company had no outstanding balances on the lines of credit as of December 31, 2017 or 2016.

The Company has entered into a repurchase agreement with a third party for up to \$5 million as of December 31, 2017 and 2016. At the time the Company enters into a transaction with the third party, the Company must transfer securities or other assets against the funds received. The terms of the agreement are set at market conditions at the time the Company enters into such transaction. The Company had no outstanding balance on the repurchase agreement as of December 31, 2017 and 2016.

The Company may borrow funds through the Federal Reserve Bank's discount window. These borrowings are secured by a blanket floating lien on qualifying loans with a balance of \$348.5 million and \$281.3 million as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. At December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company had approximately \$189.1 million and \$142.7 million, respectively, in borrowing capacity available under these arrangements with no outstanding balance as of December 31, 2017 or 2016.

## Note 10. Income Taxes

The components of income tax expense for the years ended December 31 are as follows:

	2017	2016	2015
Current income tax (benefit) expense:			
Federal	\$(15,424)	\$6,487	\$11,387
State	1,162	1,244	1,472
Total current tax (benefit) expense	(14,262 )	7,731	12,859
Deferred income tax (benefit) expense:			
Federal	8,389	(3,848 )	992
State	3,628	(440 )	(56 )
Total deferred tax (benefit) expense	12,017	(4,288 )	936
Income tax (benefit) expense, as reported	\$(2,245 )	\$3,443	\$13,795

Reported income tax expense differed from the amounts computed by applying the U.S. federal statutory income tax rate of 35% to income before income taxes for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 as follows:

	2017	2016	2015
Income tax expense computed at the statutory rate	\$34,389	\$6,023	\$12,039
State income tax, net of federal benefit	3,114	523	920
Stock-based compensation expense	(380 )	768	423
Change in U.S. tax rate	(18,921 )	—	—
Other	62	525	413
Decrease in taxes due to investment tax credit	(20,509 )	(4,396 )	—
Total income tax expense	\$(2,245 )	\$3,443	\$13,795

On December 22, 2017, the U.S. government enacted comprehensive tax legislation commonly referred to as the Tax Cut and Jobs Act (the "Tax Act"). The Tax Act makes broad and complex changes to the U.S. tax code that affects 2017, including, but not limited to, accelerated depreciation that will allow for full expensing of qualified property. The Tax Act also establishes new tax laws that will affect 2018 and after, including a reduction in the U.S. federal corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21%. The 21% tax rate positively impacted 2017 due to the revaluation of the Company's deferred tax assets and liabilities. As such, the Company recorded a provisional net tax benefit of \$18.9 million.



Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

On December 22, 2017, the SEC staff issued Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 118 (“SAB 118”), which provides guidance on accounting for the tax effects of the Tax Act. SAB 118 provides a measurement period that should not extend beyond one year from the Tax Act enactment date for companies to complete the accounting under ASC 740, Income Taxes. In accordance with SAB 118, a company must reflect the income tax effects of those aspects of the Tax Act for which the accounting under ASC 740 is complete. To the extent that a company’s accounting for certain income tax effects of the Tax Act is incomplete but it is able to determine a reasonable estimate, it must record a provisional estimate in the financial statements. The Company has recorded a provisional amount in the consolidated financial statements and expects the accounting to be completed during the fourth quarter of 2018. The final amount may differ from the provisional amount due to additional analysis, regulatory guidance that may be issued or changes in interpretation.

Components of deferred tax assets and liabilities are as follows:

	2017	2016	2015
Deferred tax assets:			
Tax credit carryforwards	\$20,272	\$ —	\$ —
Allowance for loan and lease losses	5,806	6,828	2,780
Mark to market on loans held for sale	5,751	—	—
Stock-based compensation expense	1,872	3,877	—
Goodwill and intangibles	1,259	—	—
Accrued expenses	375	725	505
Other	1,062	1,395	734
Total deferred tax assets	36,397	12,825	4,019

Deferred tax liabilities:

Investment in joint venture	16,320	—	—
Unguaranteed loan discount	6,615	4,644	4,083
Premises and equipment	24,112	7,193	3,952
Deferred loan fees and costs, net	1,139	1,321	892
Other	323	—	—
Total deferred tax liabilities	48,509	13,158	8,927
Net deferred tax liability	\$12,112	\$ 333	\$4,908

The Company has recorded a deferred tax asset of \$20.3 million related to tax credit carryforwards which will expire in 2037.

The Company does not have any material uncertain tax positions and does not have any interest and penalties recorded in the income statement for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015. The Company files a consolidated income tax return in the U.S. federal tax jurisdiction.

#### Note 11. Fair Value of Financial Instruments

##### Fair Value Hierarchy

There are three levels of inputs in the fair value hierarchy that may be used to measure fair value. Financial instruments are considered Level 1 when valuation can be based on quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities. Level 2 financial instruments are valued using quoted prices for similar assets or liabilities; quoted prices in markets that are not active; or models using inputs that are observable or can be corroborated by observable market data of substantially the full term of the assets or liabilities. Financial instruments are considered Level 3 when their values are determined using pricing models, discounted cash flow methodologies or similar techniques and at least one significant model assumption or input is unobservable and when determination of the fair value requires significant management judgment or estimation.





Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

**Financial Instruments Measured at Fair Value**

The following sections provide a description of the valuation methodologies used for instruments measured at fair value, as well as the general classification of such instruments pursuant to the fair value hierarchy:

**Investment securities:** Where quoted prices are available in an active market, securities are classified within Level 1 of the valuation hierarchy. Level 1 securities would include highly liquid government bonds, mortgage products and exchange traded equities. If quoted market prices are not available, then fair values are estimated by using pricing models, quoted prices of securities with similar characteristics, discounted cash flow or at net asset value per share. Level 2 securities would include US government agency securities, mortgage-backed securities, obligations of states and political subdivisions and certain corporate, asset backed and other securities. In certain cases where there is limited activity or less transparency around inputs to the valuation, securities are classified within Level 3 of the valuation hierarchy.

**Impaired loans:** Impairment of a loan is based on the fair value of the collateral of the loan for collateral-dependent loans. Fair value of the loan's collateral, when the loan is dependent on collateral, is determined by appraisals or independent valuation which is then adjusted for the cost related to liquidation of the collateral. For non-collateral dependent loans, impairment is determined by the present value of expected future cash flows. Impaired loans classified as Level 3 are based on management's judgment and estimation.

**Servicing assets:** Servicing rights do not trade in an active, open market with readily observable prices. While sales of servicing rights do occur, the precise terms and conditions typically are not readily available. Accordingly, the Company estimates the fair value of servicing rights using discounted cash flow models incorporating numerous assumptions from the perspective of a market participant including servicing income, servicing costs, market discount rates and prepayment speeds. Due to the nature of the valuation inputs, servicing rights are classified within Level 3 of the valuation hierarchy.

**Foreclosed assets:** Foreclosed real estate is adjusted to fair value less selling costs upon transfer of the loans to foreclosed real estate. Subsequently, foreclosed real estate is carried at the lower of carrying value or fair value less selling costs. Fair value is based upon independent market prices, appraised values of the collateral or management's estimation of the value of the collateral. When the fair value of the collateral is based on an observable market price or a current appraised value, the Company records the foreclosed asset as nonrecurring Level 2. When an appraised value is not available or management determines the fair value of the collateral is further impaired below the appraised value and there is no observable market price, the Company records foreclosed real estate as nonrecurring Level 3.

Foreclosed assets classified as Level 3 are based on management's judgment and estimation.

**Contingent consideration liability:** Contingent consideration associated with the acquisition of Reltco will be adjusted to fair value quarterly until settled. The assumptions used to measure fair value are based on internal metrics that are unobservable and therefore the contingent consideration liability is classified within Level 3 of the valuation hierarchy.

**Recurring Fair Value**

The tables below present the recorded amount of assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis.

December 31, 2017	Total	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
<b>Investment securities available-for-sale</b>				
US government agencies	\$22,624	\$	—\$22,624	\$—
Residential mortgage-backed securities	68,696	—	68,696	—
Mutual fund	2,035	—	2,035	—
Servicing assets <sup>1</sup>	52,298	—	—	52,298
<b>Total assets at fair value</b>	<b>\$ 145,653</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>—\$93,355</b>	<b>\$52,298</b>
Contingent consideration liability <sup>2</sup>	\$ 1,900	\$	—\$—	\$ 1,900

Total liabilities at fair value	\$ 1,900	\$	—	\$ 1,900
---------------------------------	----------	----	---	----------

131

---

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

December 31, 2016	Total	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Investment securities available-for-sale				
US government agencies	\$ 17,823	\$ —	—\$17,823	\$—
Residential mortgage-backed securities	51,273	—	51,273	—
Mutual fund	1,960	—	1,960	—
Servicing assets <sup>1</sup>	51,994	—	—	51,994
Total assets at fair value	\$ 123,050	\$ —	—\$71,056	\$51,994

<sup>1</sup> See Note 6 for a rollforward of recurring Level 3 fair values for servicing assets.

<sup>2</sup> See Note 2 for activity related to the recurring Level 3 fair value for the contingent consideration liability and various assumptions used in the fair value measurement.

**Non-recurring Fair Value**

The tables below present the recorded amount of assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a non-recurring basis.

December 31, 2017	Total	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Impaired loans	\$34,493	\$ —	—\$34,493	
Foreclosed assets	1,281	—	—	1,281
Total assets at fair value	\$35,774	\$ —	—\$35,774	
December 31, 2016	Total	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Impaired loans	\$27,815	\$ —	—\$27,815	
Foreclosed assets	1,648	—	—	1,648
Total assets at fair value	\$29,463	\$ —	—\$29,463	

**Level 3 Analysis**

For Level 3 assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a non-recurring basis as of December 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016 the significant unobservable inputs used in the fair value measurements were as follows:

December 31, 2017

Level 3 Assets with Significant Unobservable Inputs	Fair Value	Valuation Technique	Significant Unobservable Inputs	Range
Impaired Loans	\$34,493	Discounted appraisals Discounted expected cash flows	Appraisal adjustments (1) Interest rate & repayment term	10% to 25% Weighted average discount rate 6.26%
Foreclosed Assets	\$1,281	Discounted appraisals	Appraisal adjustments (1)	10% to 37%

December 31, 2016

Level 3 Assets with Significant Unobservable Inputs	Fair Value	Valuation Technique	Significant Unobservable Inputs	Range
Impaired Loans	\$27,815	Discounted appraisals Discounted expected cash flows	Appraisal adjustments (1) Interest rate & repayment term	0% to 25% Weighted average discount rate 5.28%
Foreclosed Assets	\$1,648	Discounted appraisals	Appraisal adjustments (1)	10% to 35%

(1) Appraisals may be adjusted by management for customized discounting criteria, estimated sales costs, and proprietary qualitative adjustments.

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Estimated Fair Value of Other Financial Instruments

GAAP also requires disclosure of fair value information about financial instruments carried at book value on the consolidated balance sheet. In cases where quoted market prices are not available, fair values are based on estimates using present value or other valuation techniques. Those techniques are significantly affected by the assumptions used, including the discount rate and estimates of future cash flows. In that regard, the derived fair value estimates cannot be substantiated by comparison to independent markets and, in many cases, could not be realized in immediate settlement of the instruments. Accordingly, the aggregate fair value amounts presented do not represent the underlying value of the Company.

The following methods and assumptions were used by the Company in estimating its fair value disclosures for financial instruments not measured at fair value on the consolidated balance sheets:

Cash and due from banks: The carrying amounts reported in the balance sheet for cash and due from banks approximate their fair values.

Certificates of deposit with other banks: The fair value of certificates of deposit with other banks is estimated based on discounting cash flows using the rates currently offered for instruments of similar remaining maturities.

Loans held for sale: The fair values of loans held for sale are based on quoted market prices, where available, and determined by discounting estimated cash flows using interest rates approximating the Company's current origination rates for similar loans adjusted to reflect the inherent credit risk.

Loans and leases held for investment: For variable-rate loans and leases that reprice frequently and with no significant change in credit risk, fair values are based on carrying amounts. The fair values for other loans and leases are estimated using discounted cash flow analysis, based on interest rates currently being offered for loans and leases with similar terms to borrowers of similar credit quality. Loan and lease fair value estimates include judgments regarding future expected loss experience and risk characteristics. Fair values for impaired loans are estimated using discounted cash flow analysis or underlying collateral values, where applicable.

Accrued interest: The carrying amounts of accrued interest approximate fair value.

Deposits: The fair values disclosed for demand deposits (e.g., interest and non-interest checking, passbook savings, and certain types of money market accounts) are, by definition, equal to the amount payable on demand at the reporting date (i.e., their carrying amounts). The carrying amounts of variable-rate, fixed-term money market accounts and certificates of deposit approximate their fair values at the reporting date. Fair values for fixed-rate certificates of deposit are estimated using a discounted cash flow calculation that applies interest rates currently being offered on certificates to a schedule of aggregated expected monthly maturities on time deposits.

Short and long term borrowings: The fair values of the Company's short term borrowings approximate fair value while long term borrowings are estimated using discounted cash flow analyses based on the Company's current incremental debt rates for similar types of debt arrangements.

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

The carrying amounts and estimated fair values of the Company's financial instruments are as follows:

December 31, 2017	Carrying Amount	Quoted Price In Active Markets for Identical Assets/Liabilities (Level 1)	Significant Other Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)	Total Fair Value
<b>Financial assets</b>					
Cash and due from banks	\$295,271	\$ 295,271	\$ —	\$ —	—\$295,271
Certificates of deposit with other banks	3,000	2,993	—	—	2,993
Investment securities, available-for-sale	93,355	—	93,355	—	93,355
Loans held for sale	680,454	—	—	706,972	706,972
Loans and leases, net of allowance for loan and lease losses	1,319,783	—	—	1,319,615	1,319,615
Servicing assets	52,298	—	—	52,298	52,298
Accrued interest receivable	10,160	10,160	—	—	10,160
<b>Financial liabilities</b>					
Deposits	2,260,263	—	2,232,370	—	2,232,370
Accrued interest payable	367	367	—	—	367
Long term borrowings	26,564	—	—	27,390	27,390
December 31, 2016	Carrying Amount	Quoted Price In Active Markets for Identical Assets/Liabilities (Level 1)	Significant Other Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)	Total Fair Value
<b>Financial assets</b>					
Cash and due from banks	\$238,008	\$ 238,008	\$ —	\$ —	—\$238,008
Certificates of deposit with other banks	7,250	7,236	—	—	7,236
Investment securities, available-for-sale	71,056	—	71,056	—	71,056
Loans held for sale	394,278	—	—	397,391	397,391
Loans and leases, net of allowance for loan and lease losses	889,357	—	—	873,158	873,158
Servicing assets	51,994	—	—	51,994	51,994
Accrued interest receivable	7,520	7,520	—	—	7,520
<b>Financial liabilities</b>					
Deposits	1,485,076	—	1,469,173	—	1,469,173
Accrued interest payable	319	319	—	—	319
Long term borrowings	27,843	—	—	29,559	29,559

## Note 12. Commitments and Contingencies

## Litigation

In the normal course of business the Company is involved in various legal proceedings. Management believes that the outcome of such proceedings will not materially affect the financial position, results of operations or cash flows of the Company.

## Financial Instruments with Off-balance-sheet Risk

The Company is party to financial instruments with off-balance-sheet risk in the normal course of business to meet the financing needs of its customers. These financial instruments include commitments to extend credit and standby

letters of credit. These instruments involve, to varying degrees, credit risk in excess of the amount recognized in the balance sheet.

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

The Company's exposure to credit loss in the event of nonperformance by the other party to the financial instrument for commitments to extend credit and standby letters of credit is represented by the contractual amount of those instruments. The Company uses the same credit policies in making commitments and conditional obligations as for on-balance-sheet instruments. A summary of the Company's commitments is as follows:

	December 31, 2017	December 31, 2016
Commitments to extend credit	\$1,701,137	\$1,342,271
Standby letters of credit	2,298	343
Solar purchase commitments	106,921	—
Airplane purchase agreement commitments	25,450	21,500
Total unfunded off-balance sheet credit risk	\$1,835,806	\$1,364,114

Commitments to extend credit are agreements to lend to a customer as long as there is no violation of any condition established in the contract. Commitments generally have fixed expiration dates or other termination clauses and may require payment of a fee. Since many of the commitments are expected to expire without being drawn upon, the total commitment amounts do not necessarily represent future cash requirements. The Company evaluates each customer's creditworthiness on a case-by-case basis. The amount of collateral obtained, if deemed necessary by the Company upon extension of credit, is based on management's credit evaluation of the party. Collateral held varies, but may include accounts receivable, inventory, property and equipment, residential real estate and income-producing commercial properties. In 2012, the Company began issuing commitment letters after approval of the loan by the Credit Department. Commitment letters generally expire ninety days after issuance.

Solar purchase commitments are to purchase solar assets to fulfill leasing obligations.

Standby letters of credit are conditional commitments issued by the Company to guarantee the performance of a customer to a third party. Those guarantees are primarily issued to support public and private borrowing arrangements. The credit risk involved in issuing letters of credit is essentially the same as that involved in extending loan facilities to customers. Collateral held varies as specified above and is required in instances which the Company deems necessary.

As of December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company had commitments for on-balance sheet instruments in the amount of \$3.5 million and \$4.9 million, respectively.

**Concentrations of Credit Risk**

Although the Company is not subject to any geographic concentrations, a substantial amount of the Company's loans and commitments to extend credit have been granted to customers in the agriculture, healthcare and veterinary verticals. The concentrations of credit by type of loan are set forth in Note 5. The distribution of commitments to extend credit approximates the distribution of loans outstanding. The Company does not have a significant number of credits to any single borrower or group of related borrowers whereby their retained exposure exceeds \$7.5 million, except for nine relationships that have a retained unguaranteed exposure of \$101.7 million of which \$70.0 million of the unguaranteed exposure has been disbursed.

Additionally, the Company has future minimum lease payments due under non-cancelable operating leases totaling \$61.0 million, of which \$43.4 million is due from three relationships.

The Company from time-to-time may have cash and cash equivalents on deposit with financial institutions that exceed federally-insured limits.

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

## Note 13. Benefit Plans

## Defined Contribution Plan

The Company maintains an employee benefit plan pursuant to Section 401(k) of the Internal Revenue Code. The plan covers substantially all employees who are at least 21 years of age and have completed one month of service.

Participants may contribute a percentage of compensation, subject to a maximum allowed under the Code. In addition, the Company makes certain matching contributions and may make additional contributions at the discretion of the board of directors. Company expense relating to the plan for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015 amounted to \$2.5 million, \$2.0 million and \$1.4 million, respectively.

## Flexible Benefits Plan

The Company maintains a Flexible Benefits Plan which covers substantially all employees. Participants may set aside pre-tax dollars to provide for future expenses such as dependent care.

## Employee Stock Purchase Plan

The Company adopted an Employee Stock Purchase Plan (2014 ESPP) on October 8, 2014. On May 24, 2016, the 2014 ESPP was amended and the Amended and Restated Employee Stock Purchase Plan became effective (ESPP), within the meaning of Section 423 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended. Under this plan, eligible employees are able to purchase available shares with post-tax dollars as of the grant date. In order for employees to be eligible to participate in this plan they must be employed or on an authorized leave of absence from the Company or any subsidiary immediately prior to the grant date. ESPP stock purchases cannot exceed \$25 thousand in fair market value per employee per calendar year. Options to purchase shares under the ESPP are granted at a 15% discount to fair market value. Expense recognized in relation to the ESPP was \$79 thousand in fiscal year 2017. There were no ESPP purchases during 2015 or 2016.

## Stock Option Plans

In 2008, the Company adopted both an Incentive Stock Option (ISO) Plan and a Non-Qualified Stock Option (NQSO) Plan. Options granted under both plans expire no more than ten years from date of grant. Exercise prices under both plans are set by the board of directors at the date of grant, but shall not be less than 100% of fair market value of the related stock at the date of the grant. Options vest over three to seven year periods from the date of the grant for both plans.

On March 20, 2015, the Company adopted the 2015 Omnibus Stock Incentive Plan which replaced the previously existing Amended Incentive Stock Option Plan and Nonstatutory Stock Option Plan. Subsequently on May 24, 2016, the 2015 Omnibus Stock Incentive Plan (the "Plan") was amended and restated to authorize awards covering a maximum of 7,000,000 common voting shares and has an expiration date of March 20, 2025. Options or restricted shares granted under the the Plan expire no more than 10 years from date of grant. Exercise prices under the Plan are set by the Board of Directors at the date of grant, but shall not be less than 100% of fair market value of the related stock at the date of the grant. Options or restricted shares vest over a minimum of three years from the date of the grant.

Compensation cost relating to share-based payment transactions are recognized in the financial statements with measurement based upon the fair value of the equity or liability instruments issued. For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015 the Company recognized \$1.7 million, \$2.3 million, and \$1.3 million in compensation expense for stock options, respectively.

Stock option activity under the Plan during the year ended December 31, 2017 is summarized below.

	Shares	Weighted Average Exercise Price	Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Term	Aggregate Intrinsic Value
Outstanding at December 31, 2016	3,478,208	\$ 11.51		



Edgar Filing: Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. - Form 10-K

Exercised	109,010	9.41		
Forfeited	310,739	14.37		
Granted	—	—		
Outstanding at December 31, 2017	3,058,459	\$ 11.30	7.04 years	\$38,398,463
Exercisable at December 31, 2017	693,460	\$ 10.43	6.83 years	\$9,308,406

136

---

Table of ContentsLive Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

The following is a summary of non-vested stock option activity for the Company for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015.

	Shares	Weighted Average Grant Date Fair Value
Non-vested at December 31, 2014	1,704,230	\$ 1.18
Granted	2,088,316	6.81
Vested	173,180	0.88
Forfeited	225,925	2.66
Non-vested at December 31, 2015	3,393,441	4.56
Granted	169,987	6.58
Vested	372,515	4.41
Forfeited	174,813	3.06
Non-vested at December 31, 2016	3,016,100	4.78
Granted	—	—
Vested	340,362	4.36
Forfeited	310,739	6.25
Non-vested at December 31, 2017	2,364,999	\$ 4.65

The total intrinsic value of options exercised during the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015 was \$1.5 million, \$590 thousand, and \$445 thousand, respectively.

At December 31, 2017, unrecognized compensation costs relating to stock options amounted to \$8.8 million which will be recognized over a weighted average period of 2.70 years.

The weighted average fair value of each stock option grant is estimated on the date of grant using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model. The expected volatility is based on historical volatility. The risk-free interest rates for periods within the contractual life of the awards are based on the U.S. Treasury yield curve in effect at the time of the grant. The expected life is based on historical exercise experience. The dividend yield assumption is based on the Company's history and expectation of dividend payouts.

There were no options granted in 2017.

Weighted average assumptions used for options granted during the the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015 were as follows:

	2016	2015
Risk free rate	1.56 %	1.95 %
Dividend yield	0.05 %	1.00 %
Volatility	44.20%	43.53 %
Average life (in years)	7	4-7

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

## Restricted Stock Plan

In 2010, the Company adopted a Restricted Stock Plan. Under this plan, a total of 1,350,000 shares of Common Stock were available for issuance to eligible employees. Restricted stock grants vest in equal installments over a two to four year period from the date of the grant. During 2015, 65,122 restricted shares at a weighted average grant date fair value of \$16.10 per share were granted under the 2015 Omnibus Stock Incentive Plan which replaced the previously existing Restricted Stock Plan. During 2016, 2,962,486 restricted stock units were granted to eligible employees and outside directors at a weighted average grant date fair value of \$9.76 per share, of which 2,872,000 restricted stock units had market price conditions or non-market-related performance criteria restrictions. During 2017, 340,318 restricted stock units were granted to eligible employees and outside directors at a weighted average grant date fair value of \$17.00 per share, of which 233,791 restricted stock units had market price conditions or non-market-related performances criteria restrictions.

The fair value of each restricted stock unit is based on the market value of the Company's stock on the date of the grant. Restricted stock awards are authorized in the form of restricted stock awards or units ("RSUs") and restricted stock awards or units with a market price condition ("Market RSUs").

RSUs have a restriction based on the passage of time and may also have a restriction based on a non-market-related performance criteria. The fair value of the RSUs is based on the closing price on the date of the grant.

Market RSUs also have a restriction based on the passage of time and non-market-related performance criteria, but also have a restriction based on market price criteria related to the Company's share price closing at or above a specified price ranging from \$34.00 to \$38.00 per share for at least twenty (20) consecutive trading days at any time prior to the expiration date of the grants. The amount of Market RSUs earned will not exceed 100% of the Market RSUs awarded. The fair value of the Market RSUs and the implied service period is calculated using the Monte Carlo Simulation method.

The following is a summary of non-vested RSU stock activity for the Company for the year ended December 31, 2017.

	Shares	Weighted Average Grant Date Fair Value
Non-vested at December 31, 2016	134,969	\$ 14.96
Granted	106,527	23.71
Vested	39,002	15.45
Forfeited	20,680	14.55
Non-vested at December 31, 2017	181,814	\$ 20.03

During 2016 and 2015, the Company granted 597,986 and 65,122 RSUs, respectively. The weighted average grant date fair value for RSUs granted in 2016 and 2015 were \$15.61 and \$16.10, respectively.

For the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015 the Company recognized \$741 thousand, \$8.5 million, and \$148 thousand in compensation expense for RSUs, respectively.

At December 31, 2017, unrecognized compensation costs relating to RSUs amounted to \$3.2 million which will be recognized over a weighted average period of 4.54 years.

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

The following is a summary of non-vested Market RSU stock activity for the Company for the year ended December 31, 2017.

	Shares	Weighted Average Grant Date Fair Value
Non-vested at December 31, 2016	2,364,500	\$ 8.28
Granted	233,791	13.94
Vested	—	—
Forfeited	65,483	9.17
Non-vested at December 31, 2017	2,532,808	\$ 8.78

During 2016, the Company granted 2,364,500 Market RSUs with a weighted average grant date fair value of \$8.28.

The compensation expense for Market RSUs is measured based on their grant date fair value as calculated using the Monte Carlo Simulation and is recognized on a straight-line basis over the average vesting period. The Monte Carlo Simulation used 100,000 simulation paths to assess the expected date of achieving the market price criteria.

Related to the 100,733 Market RSUs granted on January 31, 2017 and the 3,058 Market RSUs granted on May 8, 2017, the share price simulation was based on the Cox, Ross & Rubinstein option pricing methodology for a period of 7.0 years. The implied term of the restricted stock was 4.1 years. The Monte Carlo Simulation used various assumptions that included a risk free rate of return of 2.28%, expected volatility of 30.00% and a dividend yield of 0.39%.

Related to the 130,000 Market RSUs granted on August 7, 2017, the share price simulation was based on the Cox, Ross & Rubinstein option pricing methodology for a period of 7.0 years. The implied term of the restricted stock was 3.9 years. The Monte Carlo Simulation used various assumptions that included a risk free rate of return of 2.07%, expected volatility of 30.00% and a dividend yield of 0.33%.

For the year ended December 31, 2017 and 2016, the Company recognized \$5.0 million and \$1.2 million, respectively, in compensation expense for Market RSUs.

At December 31, 2017, unrecognized compensation costs relating to Market RSUs amounted to \$16.2 million which will be recognized over a weighted average period of 3.01 years.

**Employee/Outside Director Bonus Plan**

In 2014, the Company adopted a Bonus Plan whereby eligible employees and outside directors were qualified to receive quarterly and annual bonus payments based on each individual's base pay/annual director fees and the profitability of the Company. In 2016, the Company approved a revised Incentive Compensation Plan and the payout criteria was adjusted for exceeding thresholds based on certain performance metrics and the profitability of the Company and applied to full-time employees only. Total expenses related to the bonus plan for employees were \$3.2 million, \$2.9 million, and \$3.2 million for the years ended December 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015, respectively. Total expenses related to the bonus plan for outside directors was \$14 thousand for the year ended December 31, 2015. For 2016 and 2017, this plan no longer applied to outside directors.

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 14. Regulatory Matters

Dividends

The Bank, as a North Carolina banking corporation, may pay dividends to shareholders provided the bank does not make distributions that reduce its capital below its applicable required capital, pursuant to North Carolina General Statutes Section 53C-4-7. However, regulatory authorities may limit payment of dividends by any bank when it is determined that such a limitation is in the public interest and is necessary to ensure financial soundness of the bank.

Capital Requirements

The Company (on a consolidated basis) and the Bank are subject to various regulatory capital requirements administered by the federal banking agencies. Failure to meet minimum capital requirements can initiate certain mandatory and possibly additional discretionary actions by regulators that, if undertaken, could have a direct material effect on the Company's and Bank's financial statements. Under capital adequacy guidelines and the regulatory framework for prompt corrective action, the Company and the Bank must meet specific capital guidelines that involve quantitative measures of their assets, liabilities and certain off-balance-sheet items as calculated under regulatory accounting principles. The capital amounts and classification are also subject to qualitative judgments by the regulators about components, risk weightings, and other factors. Prompt corrective action provisions are not applicable to bank holding companies.

The Basel III Capital Rules, a comprehensive capital framework for U.S. banking organizations, became effective for the Company and Bank on January 1, 2015 (subject to a phase-in period for certain provisions). Quantitative measures established by the Basel III Capital Rules to ensure capital adequacy require the maintenance of minimum amounts and ratios (set forth in the table below) of Common Equity Tier 1 capital, Tier 1 capital and Total capital (as defined in the regulations) to risk-weighted assets (as defined), and of Tier 1 capital to adjusted quarterly average assets (as defined). Management believes, as of December 31, 2017 and 2016 that the Company and the Bank meet all capital adequacy requirements to which they are subject.

When fully phased in on January 1, 2019, the Basel III Capital Rules will require the Company and Bank to maintain (i) a minimum ratio of Common Equity Tier 1 capital to risk-weighted assets of at least 4.5%, plus a 2.5% "capital conservation buffer" (which is added to the 4.5% Common Equity Tier 1 capital ratio as that buffer is phased in, effectively resulting in a minimum ratio of Common Equity Tier 1 capital to risk-weighted assets of at least 7.0% upon full implementation), (ii) a minimum ratio of Tier 1 capital to risk-weighted assets of at least 6.0%, plus the capital conservation buffer (which is added to the 6.0% Tier 1 capital ratio as that buffer is phased in, effectively resulting in a minimum Tier 1 capital ratio of 8.5% upon full implementation), (iii) a minimum ratio of Total capital (that is, Tier 1 plus Tier 2) to risk-weighted assets of at least 8.0%, plus the capital conservation buffer (which is added to the 8.0% total capital ratio as that buffer is phased in, effectively resulting in a minimum total capital ratio of 10.5% upon full implementation) and (iv) a minimum leverage ratio of 4.0%, calculated as the ratio of Tier 1 capital to average quarterly assets.

The implementation of the capital conservation buffer began on January 1, 2016 at the 0.625% level and will be phased in over a three-year period (increasing by that amount on each subsequent January 1, until it reaches 2.5% on January 1, 2019). Banking institutions with a ratio of Common Equity Tier 1 capital to risk-weighted assets below the effective minimum (4.5% plus the capital conservation buffer) will face constraints on dividends, equity repurchases and compensation based on the amount of the shortfall.

As of December 31, 2017, the most recent notification from the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation categorized the Bank as well capitalized under the regulatory framework for prompt corrective action. To be categorized as well capitalized, an institution must maintain minimum common equity Tier 1 risk-based, total risk-based, Tier 1 risk-based and Tier 1 leverage ratios as set forth in the following tables. There are no conditions or events since the notification that management believes have changed the Bank's category.



Table of ContentsLive Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Capital amounts and ratios as of December 31, 2017 and 2016, are presented in the table below.

	Actual		Minimum Capital Requirement		Minimum To Be Well Capitalized	
	Amount	Ratio	Amount	Ratio	Amount	Ratio
Consolidated - December 31, 2017						
Common Equity Tier 1 (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$390,816	17.81 %	\$98,764	4.50 %	\$142,659	6.50 %
Total Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$415,006	18.91 %	\$175,580	8.00 %	\$219,475	10.00 %
Tier 1 Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$390,816	17.81 %	\$131,685	6.00 %	\$175,580	8.00 %
Tier 1 Capital (to Average Assets)	\$390,816	15.50 %	\$100,828	4.00 %	\$126,036	5.00 %
Bank - December 31, 2017						
Common Equity Tier 1 (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$277,943	12.89 %	\$97,060	4.50 %	\$140,197	6.50 %
Total Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$302,385	14.02 %	\$172,551	8.00 %	\$215,688	10.00 %
Tier 1 Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$277,943	12.89 %	\$129,413	6.00 %	\$172,551	8.00 %
Tier 1 Capital (to Average Assets)	\$277,943	11.36 %	\$97,864	4.00 %	\$122,330	5.00 %
Consolidated - December 31, 2016						
Common Equity Tier 1 (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$206,670	15.31 %	\$60,732	4.50 %	\$87,724	6.50 %
Total Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$223,559	16.56 %	\$107,968	8.00 %	\$134,960	10.00 %
Tier 1 Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$206,670	15.31 %	\$80,976	6.00 %	\$107,968	8.00 %
Tier 1 Capital (to Average Assets)	\$206,670	12.00 %	\$68,919	4.00 %	\$86,149	5.00 %
Bank - December 31, 2016						
Common Equity Tier 1 (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$139,078	10.68 %	\$58,579	4.50 %	\$84,615	6.50 %
Total Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$155,423	11.94 %	\$104,141	8.00 %	\$130,177	10.00 %
Tier 1 Capital (to Risk-Weighted Assets)	\$139,078	10.68 %	\$78,106	6.00 %	\$104,141	8.00 %
Tier 1 Capital (to Average Assets)	\$139,078	8.41 %	\$66,142	4.00 %	\$82,678	5.00 %

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 15. Transactions with Related Parties

The Company has entered into transactions with its directors, officers, significant shareholders and their affiliates (related parties). Such transactions were made in the ordinary course of business on substantially the same terms and conditions, including interest rates, as those prevailing at the same time for comparable transactions with other customers, and did not, in the opinion of management, involve more than normal risk or present other unfavorable features.

There were no related party loans at December 31, 2017 and 2016, other than those disclosed as secured borrowings in Note 9.

Deposits from related parties held by the Company at December 31, 2017 and 2016 amounted to \$42.8 million and \$24.4 million, respectively.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company invested \$75 thousand in Plexus Funds II and III, L.P. which is included in other assets in the consolidated balance sheets at December 31, 2017 and 2016 with a balance of \$1.0 million. There were no additional investments in Plexus Funds II and III, L.P. during the year ended December 31, 2017. In May 2016, the Company committed to invest \$2.5 million in Plexus Fund IV-C, L.P. which is included in other assets in the consolidated balance sheet at December 31, 2017 and 2016, with \$188 thousand of the commitment invested during 2016 and an additional \$375 thousand invested during 2017. A member of the Company's board of directors is also a member of Plexus Capital, the administrator of Plexus Funds II, III and IV, L.P.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company invested \$1.0 million in DefenseStorm, Inc. ("DefenseStorm"), which is included in other assets in the consolidated balance sheets with a balance of \$1.5 million at both December 31, 2017 and 2016. The Company holds voting and non-voting equity in DefenseStorm which is accounted for as a cost method investment. DefenseStorm provides a broad range of IT and cyber security solutions principally designed for financial institutions. As of December 31, 2017, the Company held approximately 7.9% of DefenseStorm on a fully diluted basis in the form of both voting and non-voting common equity, including approximately 4.0% voting control. Directors and officers of the Company and their affiliates collectively own approximately 9.8% of DefenseStorm on a fully diluted basis as of December 31, 2017. During 2017 and 2016, the Company had business transactions with DefenseStorm amounting to \$405 thousand and \$47 thousand, respectively, for cyber security event monitoring services.

During the year ended December 31, 2016, the Company invested \$2.8 million in Finxact LLC ("Finxact"), a developer of core processing software and services for the banking industry, which is included in other assets in the consolidated balance sheet. At December 31, 2017, the Company holds approximately 18.8% of Finxact on a fully diluted basis in the form of both voting and non-voting equity, including approximately 14.1% voting control. This investment is accounted for as an equity method investment due to the Company's ability to exercise significant influence over financial and operating policies of Finxact. Certain officers and directors of the Company collectively own approximately 7.5% of Finxact on a fully diluted basis in the form of non-voting equity at December 31, 2017. During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company invested \$1.5 million in Payrailz, LLC ("Payrailz"), an entity that provides digital payment services to the financial services industry, which is included in other assets in the consolidated balance sheet. At December 31, 2017, the Company holds approximately 16.0% of Payrailz on a fully diluted basis in the form of voting equity. This investment is accounted for as an equity method investment due to the Company's ability to exercise significant influence over financial and operating policies of Payrailz. Certain officers and directors of the Company collectively own approximately 4.3% of Payrailz on a fully diluted basis in the form of voting equity at December 31, 2017.

During the year ended December 31, 2017, the Company closed the digital banking joint venture between Live Oak Banking Company and First Data Corporation creating a new company called Apiture. See Note 3. Unconsolidated Joint Venture for further discussion. During 2017, the Company had business transactions with Apiture amounting to \$304 thousand for professional services.





Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

## Note 16. Parent Company Only Financial Statements

The following balance sheets, statements of income and statements of cash flows for Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. should be read in conjunction with the consolidated financial statements and the notes thereto.

## Balance Sheets

	2017	2016
Assets		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$54,502	\$14,029
Investment in subsidiaries	351,647	174,957
Premises & equipment, net	33,948	30,290
Other assets	25,457	32,391
Total assets	\$465,554	\$251,667
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity		
Long term borrowings	\$26,564	\$27,843
Other liabilities	2,057	977
Total liabilities	28,621	28,820
Shareholders' equity:		
Common stock	317,725	199,981
Retained earnings	120,241	23,518
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(1,033 )	(652 )
Total equity	436,933	222,847
Total liabilities & shareholders' equity	\$465,554	\$251,667

143

Table of ContentsLive Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

## Statements of Income

	2017	2016	2015
Interest income	\$5	\$50	\$70
Interest expense	1,210	964	1,156
Net interest loss	(1,205 )	(914 )	(1,086 )
Noninterest income:			
Dividends from banking subsidiary	—	—	4,205
Gain on sale of investment in non-consolidated affiliate	—	—	3,782
Other noninterest income	2,114	2,041	1,360
Total noninterest income	2,114	2,041	9,347
Noninterest expense:			
Salaries and employee benefits	10,531	12,785	2,592
Professional services expense	1,192	675	812
Renewable energy tax credit investment impairment	690	3,197	—
Contingent consideration fair value adjustment	(4,350 )	—	—
Other expense	2,588	2,076	1,719
Total noninterest expense	10,651	18,733	5,123
Net (loss) income before equity in undistributed income of subsidiaries	(9,742 )	(17,606 )	3,138
Income tax benefit	(320 )	(10,065 )	(41 )
Net (loss) income	(9,422 )	(7,541 )	3,179
Equity in undistributed income of subsidiaries in excess of dividends from subsidiaries	109,921	21,305	17,422
Net income	100,499	13,764	20,601
Net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	—	9	24
Net income attributable to Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.	\$100,499	\$13,773	\$20,625

Table of ContentsLive Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

## Statements of Cash Flows

	2017	2016	2015
Cash flows from operating activities			
Net income	\$ 100,499	\$ 13,764	\$ 20,601
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by (used in) operating activities:			
Equity in undistributed net income of subsidiaries in excess of dividends of subsidiaries	(109,921 )	(21,305 )	(17,422 )
Depreciation	1,188	1,173	739
Impairment on contingent consideration	(4,350 )	—	—
Deferred income tax	(5,376 )	(2,695 )	582
Renewable energy tax credit investment impairment	690	3,197	—
Stock option based compensation expense	1,786	2,349	1,277
Restricted stock expense	5,717	9,724	148
Gain on sale of investment in non-consolidated affiliate	—	—	(3,782 )
Business combination contingent consideration fair value adjustment	1,950	—	—
Net change in other assets	11,649	(17,930 )	(8,785 )
Net change in other liabilities	(820 )	(358 )	1,422
Net cash provided by (used in) operating activities	3,012	(12,081 )	(5,220 )
Cash flows from investing activities			
Capital investment in subsidiaries	(55,240 )	(45,870 )	(28,250 )
Net change in advances to subsidiaries	640	—	—
Business combination, net of cash acquired	(7,696 )	—	—
Proceeds from sale of investment in non-consolidated affiliate	—	—	9,896
Capital contribution from non-controlling interest	—	—	22
Purchases of premises and equipment	(4,864 )	(143 )	(11,397 )
Net cash used in investing activities	(67,160 )	(46,013 )	(29,729 )
Cash flows from financing activities			
Proceeds from long term borrowings	16,900	—	12,960
Repayments of long term borrowings	(26,279 )	(532 )	(26,609 )
Proceeds from short term borrowings	8,100	—	—
Stock option exercises	1,026	401	239
Employee stock purchase program	445	—	—
Withholding cash issued in lieu of restricted stock	(4,891 )	—	—
Sale of common stock, net	113,096	—	87,171
Shareholder dividend distributions	(3,776 )	(2,737 )	(2,732 )
Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities	104,621	(2,868 )	71,029
Net change in cash and cash equivalents	40,473	(60,962 )	36,080
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of year	14,029	74,991	38,911
Cash and cash equivalents at end of year	\$ 54,502	\$ 14,029	\$ 74,991

Table of Contents

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

Note 17. Subsequent Events

Management has evaluated subsequent events through the date the financial statements were available to be issued and determined that the following events required disclosure:

Debt Repayment

On January 31, 2018, the Company repaid in full the \$24.0 million construction line of credit with an unaffiliated commercial bank. The balance of the long term borrowing was \$23.0 million at December 31, 2017. The payoff amount on January 31, 2018 was \$23.2 million, including a \$229 thousand prepayment penalty.

Investment Securities Purchase

On February 22, 2018, the Company purchased eighteen residential mortgage-backed securities for a total of \$170.3 million with a weighted average book yield of 3.02% and an average life of 4.9 years. These purchases are part of a strategic plan to enhance the Company's contingent funding sources.

Table of Contents

Item CHANGES IN AND DISAGREEMENTS WITH ACCOUNTANTS ON ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL  
9. DISCLOSURE

None.

Item 9A. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES

Evaluation of Disclosure Controls and Procedures

As of the end of the period covered by this Annual Report on Form 10-K, the Company carried out an evaluation, under the supervision and with the participation of its management, including its Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, of the effectiveness of the design and operation of its disclosure controls and procedures. In designing and evaluating the disclosure controls and procedures, management recognizes that any controls and procedures, no matter how well designed and operated, can provide only reasonable assurance of achieving the desired control objectives, and management was required to apply judgment in evaluating its controls and procedures. Based on this evaluation, the Company's Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer concluded that the Company's disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e) under the Exchange Act), were effective as of the end of the period covered by this report.

Management's Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting

As of December 31, 2017, management assessed the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on the criteria for effective internal control over financial reporting established in "Internal Control-Integrated Framework (2013)," issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations ("COSO") of the Treadway Commission. Based on the assessment, management determined that the Company maintained effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2017.

Dixon Hughes Goodman LLP, the independent registered public accounting firm, audited the consolidated financial statements of the Company included in this Annual Report on Form 10-K. Their report is included in Part II, Item 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data under the heading "Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm." This Annual Report on Form 10-K does not include an attestation report of the Company's registered public accounting firm due to an exemption established by the JOBS Act for emerging growth companies.

Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting

There were no changes in the Company's internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f) under the Exchange Act) that occurred during the quarter ended December 31, 2017, that have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, the Company's internal control over financial reporting.

Item 9B. OTHER INFORMATION

None.

Table of Contents

**PART III**

**Item 10. DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE**

The information required by Item 10 will be included in LOB's definitive proxy statement for the 2018 Annual Meeting of Shareholders (the "Proxy Statement"), under the headings "Proposal 1: Election of Directors," "Qualification of Directors," "Executive Officers," "Report of the Audit and Risk Committee," and "Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance" and is incorporated herein by reference. The Proxy Statement will be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission pursuant to Regulation 14A within 120 days of the end of our 2017 fiscal year.

**Item 11. EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION**

The information required by Item 11 will be included in the Proxy Statement under the headings "Executive Compensation and Other Matters" and "Corporate Governance - Compensation Committee Interlocks and Insider Participation" and is incorporated herein by reference.

**Item SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT AND  
12. RELATED SHAREHOLDER MATTERS**

The information required by Item 12 will be included in the Proxy Statement under the headings "Beneficial Ownership of Our Common Stock" and "Executive Compensation and Other Matters - Equity Compensation Plan Information" and is incorporated herein by reference.

**Item 13. CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS, AND DIRECTOR INDEPENDENCE**

The information required by Item 13 will be included in the Corporate Governance section of the Proxy Statement under the headings "Director Independence," "Director Relationships," "Indebtedness of and Transactions with Management," and "Certain Relationships and Related Person Transactions" and is incorporated herein by reference.

**Item 14. PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTING FEES AND SERVICES**

The information required by Item 14 will be included in the Proxy Statement under the heading "Proposal 3: Ratification of Independent Auditors" and is incorporated herein by reference.

Table of Contents

PART IV

Item 15. EXHIBITS, FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULES

(a)(1) Financial Statements. The following financial statements and supplementary data are included in Item 8 of this report.

Financial Statements

Quarterly Financial Information

Reports of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

Consolidated Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2017 and 2016

Consolidated Statements of Income for the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015

Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income for the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015

Consolidated Statements of Changes in Shareholders' Equity for the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015

Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015

(a)(2) Financial Statement Schedules. All applicable financial statement schedules required under Regulation S-X have been included in the Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements

(a)(3) Exhibits. The exhibits listed in the accompanying Exhibit Index are filed as a part of this Annual Report on Form 10-K



Table of Contents

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned thereunto duly authorized.

Live Oak Bancshares, Inc.  
(Registrant)

Date: March 8, 2018 By: /s/ James S. Mahan III  
James S. Mahan III  
Chairman and Chief Executive Officer  
(Principal Executive Officer)

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed by the following persons on behalf of the Registrant and in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

	Date
/s/ James S. Mahan III James S. Mahan III Chairman and Chief Executive Officer (Principal Executive Officer)	March 8, 2018
/s/ S. Brett Caines S. Brett Caines Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial Officer)	March 8, 2018
/s/ J. Wesley Sutherland J. Wesley Sutherland Chief Accounting Officer (Principal Accounting Officer)	March 8, 2018
/s/ William L. Williams III William L. Williams III Vice Chairman of the Board of Directors	March 8, 2018
/s/ William H. Cameron William H. Cameron Director	March 8, 2018
/s/ Diane B. Glossman Diane B. Glossman Director	March 8, 2018

Table of Contents

/s/ Glen F. Hoffsis  
Glen F. Hoffsis      March 8, 2018  
Director

/s/ Howard K. Landis  
Howard K. Landis      March 8, 2018  
Director

/s/ Miltom E. Petty  
Miltom E. Petty      March 8, 2018  
Director

/s/ Jerald L. Pullins  
Jerald L. Pullins      March 8, 2018  
Director

/s/ Neil L. Underwood  
Neil L. Underwood      March 8, 2018  
Director

Table of Contents

INDEX TO EXHIBITS

The following exhibits are incorporated by reference or filed herewith. References to the "2015 10-K" are to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2015. References to the "2016 10-K" are to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016.

Exhibit No.	Description of Exhibit
2.1	Contribution Agreement dated as of May 9, 2017 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 2.1 of the current report on Form 8-K filed on May 5, 2017)
3.1	Amended and Restated Articles of Incorporation of Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.1 of the registration statement on Form S-1, filed on June 19, 2015)
3.2	Amended Bylaws of Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.2 of the registration statement on Form S-1, filed on June 19, 2015)
4.1	Form of Common Stock Certificate (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 of the registration statement on Form S-1, filed on June 19, 2015)
4.2	Registration and Other Rights Agreement between Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. and Wellington purchasers (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.2 of the registration statement on Form S-1, filed on June 19, 2015)
10.1	2008 Incentive Stock Option Plan, as amended (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the registration statement on Form S-1, filed on June 19, 2015)
10.2	2008 Nonstatutory Stock Option Plan, as amended (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 of the registration statement on Form S-1, filed on June 19, 2015)
10.3	Amended and Restated Employee Stock Purchase Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 of the quarterly report on Form 10-Q filed on August 8, 2016)
10.4.1	2015 Omnibus Stock Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 of the registration statement on Form S-1 filed on June 19, 2015)
10.4.2	Amendment to 2015 Omnibus Stock Incentive Plan dated December 17, 2015 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4.2 of the 2015 10-K)
10.4.3	2015 Omnibus Stock Incentive Plan as Amended and Restated effective May 24, 2016 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the current report on Form 8-K filed on May 27, 2016)
10.5.1	Securities Purchase Agreement, dated May 28, 2014 between Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. and Wellington purchasers (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.7 of the registration statement on Form S-1 filed on June 19, 2015)
10.5.2	First Amendment to Securities Purchase Agreement, dated July 31, 2014 between Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. and Wellington purchasers (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.8 of the registration statement on Form S-1 filed on June 19, 2015)
10.5.3	Second Amendment to Securities Purchase Agreement, dated August 1, 2014 between Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. and Wellington purchasers (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.9 of the registration statement on Form S-1 filed on June 19, 2015)
10.6.1	Software Service Agreement between Live Oak Banking Company and nCino, LLC, dated November 1, 2012 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.10 of the registration statement on Form S-1 filed on June 19, 2015)
10.6.2	Amendment to Software Service Agreement dated October 9, 2015, between Live Oak Banking Company and nCino, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.7.2 of the 2015 10-K)
10.7.1	Form of Stock Option Award Agreement for executive officers under the 2015 Omnibus Stock Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.8 of the 2015 10-K)
10.7.2	Performance RSU Award Agreement for Neil L. Underwood (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 99.1 of the current report on Form 8-K filed on March 25, 2016)
10.7.3	Performance RSU Award Agreement with Stock Price Condition for Neil L. Underwood (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 99.2 of the current report on Form 8-K filed on March 25, 2016)

Edgar Filing: Live Oak Bancshares, Inc. - Form 10-K

- 10.7.4 Form of Performance RSU Award Agreement with Stock Price Condition for certain executive officers (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 99.1 of the current report on Form 8-K filed on December 2, 2016)
- 10.7.5 Form of Performance RSU Award Agreement with Stock Price Condition for certain executive officers (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 99.1 of the current report on Form 8-K filed on February 2, 2017)
- 10.7.6 Form of Performance RSU Award Agreement with Stock Price Condition for certain executive officers\*
- 10.7.7 Form of RSU Award Agreement with Separation Agreement for Gregory B. Thompson dated February 12, 2018\*
- 10.7.8 Form of 2017 RSU Award Agreement for non-employee directors\*

152

---

Table of Contents

Exhibit No.	Description of Exhibit
21.1	<u>Subsidiaries of the Registrant*</u>
23.1	<u>Consent of the Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm - Dixon Hughes Goodman LLP*</u>
31.1	<u>Certification of Principal Executive Officer Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002*</u>
31.2	<u>Certification of Principal Financial Officer Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002*</u>
32	<u>Certification Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002**</u>
101	Interactive data files pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T: (i) Consolidated Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2017 and 2016; (ii) Consolidated Statements of Income for the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015; (iii) Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income for the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015; (iv) Consolidated Statements of Changes in Shareholders' Equity for the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015; (v) Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the Years Ended December 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015; and (vi) Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.*

\*Indicates a document being filed with this Form 10-K.

Furnished herewith. This exhibit shall not be deemed "filed" for purposes of Section 18 of the Securities Exchange

\*\* Act of 1934, or otherwise subject to the liability of that Section. Such exhibit shall not be deemed incorporated into any filing under the Securities Act of 1933 or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.